

DA8
1229
B57
1722

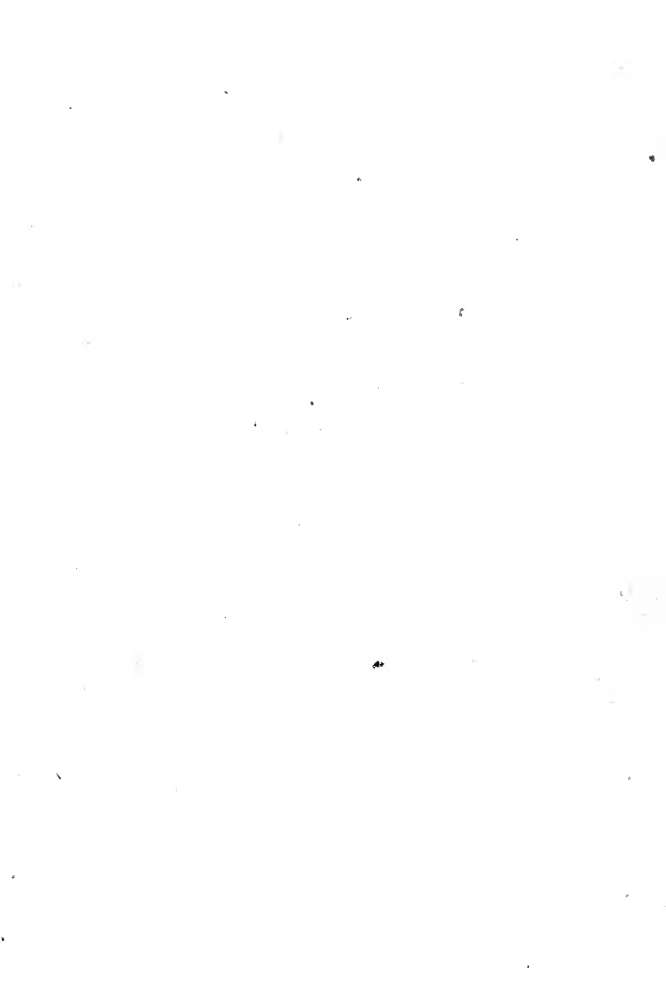
Library

University of Pittsburgh

Darlington Memorial Library

Class ^{Dev.} F229

Book 057
1722



Scanned
1476-45

via Q

14

1476-45

1476-45

1476-45

1476-45

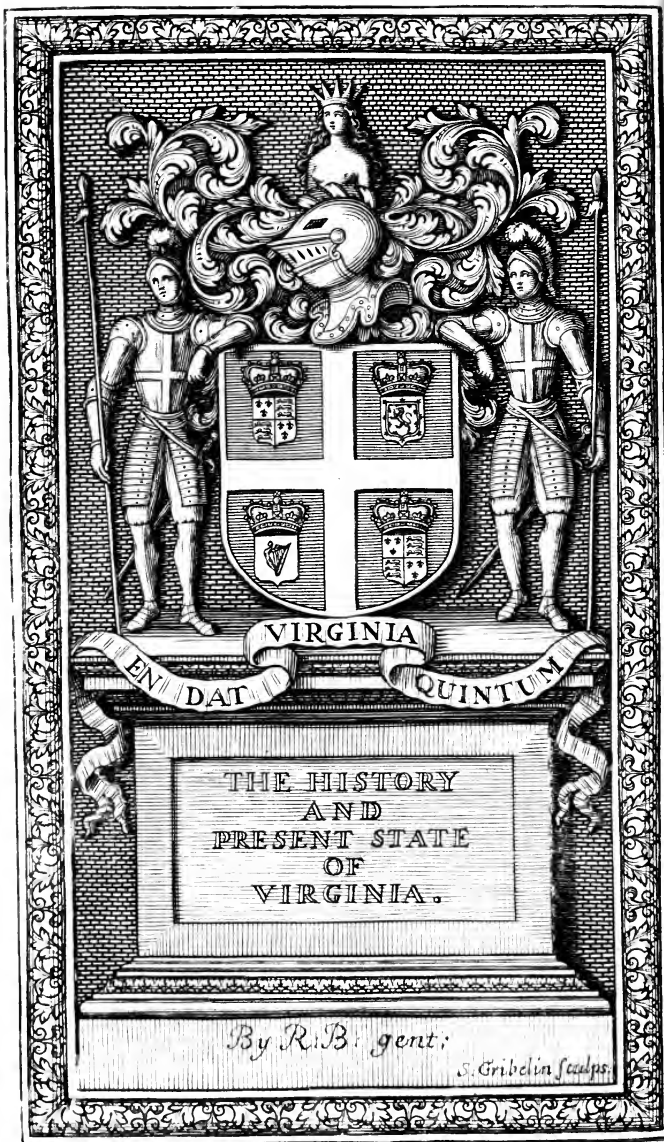
1476-45

$$\begin{array}{r}
 536 \\
 519 \\
 \hline
 117
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{r}
 123 \\
 13 \\
 \hline
 519
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{r}
 173 \\
 642 \\
 \hline
 636 \\
 \hline
 56
 \end{array}$$

Young
New York.

1853.





From THE *Cholmley*
HISTORY
OF
VIRGINIA,
In Four P A R T S.

- Beverley, Robert.*
- I. The HISTORY of the First Settlement of *Virginia*, and the Government thereof, to the Year 1706.
 - II. The natural Productions and Conveniences of the Country, suited to Trade and Improvement.
 - III. The Native *Indians*, their Religion, Laws, and Customs, in War and Peace.
 - IV. The present State of the Country, as to the Polity of the Government, and the Improvements of the Land, the 10th of *June* 1720.

By a Native and Inhabitant of the P L A C E.

The SECOND EDITION revis'd and enlarg'd by the AUTHOR.

L O N D O N :

Printed for B. and S. TOOKE in *Fleetstreet*; F. FAYRAM and J. CLARKE at the *Royal-Exchange*, and T. BICKERTON in *Pater-Noster Row*, 1722.

Har
F229
B57:
1722

3301



THE PREFACE.



Y first Business in the World being among the public Records of my Country, the active Thoughts of my Youth put me upon taking Notes of the general Administration of the Government; but with no other Design, than the Gratification of my own inquisitive Mind; these lay by me for many Years afterwards obscure and secret, and would forever have done so, had not the following Accident produced them.

*I*n the Year 1703, my Affairs calling me to England, I was soon after my Arrival, complimented by my Bookseller with an Intimation, that there was prepar'd for Printing a general Account of all her Majesty's Plantations in America, and his Desire, that I would overlook it before it was put to the Press; I agreed to overlook that Part of it which related to Virginia.

Soon after this he brings me about Six Sheets of Paper written, which contain'd the Account of Virginia and Carolina: This it seems was to have answered a Part of Mr. Oldmixon's *British Empire in America*. I very innocently (when I began to read) placed Pen and Paper by me, and made my Observations upon the first Page, but found it in the Sequel so very faulty, and an Abridgment only of some Accounts that had been printed 60 or 70 Years ago; in which also he had chosen the most strange and un-

The P R E F A C E.

true Parts, and left out the more sincere and faithful, so that I laid aside all Thoughts of farther Observations, and gave it only a Reading; and my Bookseller for Answer, that the Account was too faulty and too imperfect to be mended: Withal telling him, that seeing I had in my junior Days taken some Notes of the Government, which I then had with me in England, I would make him an Account of my own Country, if I could find Time, while I staid in London. And this I should the rather undertake in Justice to so fine a Country; because it has been so misrepresented to the common People of England, as to make them believe, that the Servants in Virginia are made to draw in Cart and Plow, as Horses and Oxen do in England, and that the Country turns all People black, who go to live there, with other such prodigious Phantasms.

Accordingly before I left London, I gave him a short History of the Country, from the first Settlement, with an Account of its then State; but I would not let him mingle it with Oldmixon's other Account of the Plantations, because I took them to be all of a Piece with those I had seen of Virginia and Carolina, but desired mine to be printed by it self. And this I take to be the only Reason of that Gentleman's so severely reflecting upon me in his Book, for I never saw him in my Life that I know of.

But concerning that Work of his, I may with great Truth say, that (notwithstanding his Boast of having the Assistance of many original Papers and Memorials that I had not the Opportunity of) he no where varies from the Account that I gave, nor advances any thing new of his own, but he commits so many Errors, and imposes so many Falsities upon the World. To instance some few out of the many.

Page 210. He says, that they were near spent with Cold, which is impossible in that hot Country.

The P R E F A C E.

Pag. 220. *He says, that Captain Weymouth in 1605, enter'd Powhatan River Southward of the Bay of Chesapeak; ——— whereas Powhatan River is now call'd James River, and lies within the Mouth of Chesapeak Bay some Miles, on the West side of it; and Captain Weymouth's Voyage was only to Hudson's River, which is in New York, much Northward of the Capes of Virginia.*

Pag. 236. *He jumbles the Patowmeck and Eastern Shore Indians, as if they liv'd together, and never quarrell'd with the English; whereas the last liv'd on the East side the great Bay of Chesapeak, and the other on the West. The Eastern Shore Indians never had any Quarrel with the English, but the Patowmecks used many Treacheries and Enmities towards us, and join'd in the intended general Massacre, but by a timely Discovery were prevented doing any thing.*

Pag. 245. *He says, that Morison held an Assembly, and procur'd that Body of Laws to be made. ——— Whereas Morison only made an Abridgment of the Laws then in being, and compil'd them into a regular Body; and this he did by Direction of Sir William Berkley, who, upon his going to England, left Morison his Deputy Governor.*

Pag. 248. *He says (viz. in Sir William Berkley's Time) the English could send 7000 Men into the Field, and have twice as many at Home. ——— Whereas at this Day they cannot do that, and yet have three times as many People in the Country as they had then.*

By Pag. 251. *he seems altogether ignorant of the Situation of Virginia, the Head of the Bay and New York, for he there says,*

“ When the Indians at the Head of the Bay travel'd to New York, they pass, going and coming, by the Frontiers of Virginia, and traded with the Virginians, &c. ——— Whereas the Head of the

The P R E F A C E.

Bay is in the common Rout of the Indians travelling from New York to Virginia, and much about half Way.

Pag. 255. *He says Sir William Berkley withdrew himself from his Government; — whereas he went not out of it, for the Countries of Accomack and Northampton, to which he retir'd, were two Counties of his Government, and only parted from the rest where the Rebels rise by the Bay of Chesapeak.*

Pag. 266. *He says, Dr. Tho. Bray went over to be President of the College in Virginia; — whereas he was sent to Maryland, as the Bishop's Commissary there. And Mr. Blair in the Charter to the College, was made President during Life, and is still alive. He also says, that all that was subscribed for the College came to nothing; — whereas all the Subscriptions were in a short time paid in, and expended upon the College; of which 2 or 3 stood Suit, and were cast.*

Pag. 269. *He tells of Camels brought by some Guinea Ships to Virginia; but had not then heard how they throve with us; — I don't know how he should, for there never was any such thing done.*

Then his Geography of the Country is most absurd, notwithstanding the wonderful Care he pretends to have of the Maps, and his expert Knowledge of the new Surveys (Pag. 278.) making almost as many Faults as Descriptions.

For Instance,

Pag. 272. *Prince George County, which lies all on the South Side James River, he places on the North. And says, that, Part of James City County and four of the Parishes of it lie on the South side James River —; whereas not one Inch of it has so done these sixty Years.*

The P R E F A C E.

Pag. 273. *His Account of Williamsburgh is most romantick and untrue; and so is his Account of the College. Pag. 302, 303.*

Pag. 274. *He makes Elizabeth and Warwick Counties to lye upon York River; whereas both of them lie upon James River, and neither of them comes near York River.*

Pag. 275. *He Places King William County above New Kent, and on both Sides Pamnuky River; whereas it lies side by side with New Kent, and all on the North Side Pamnuky River. He places King and Queen County upon the South of New Kent, at the Head of Chickahomony River, which he says rises in it: — Whereas that County lies North of New Kent from Head to Foot, and two large Rivers and two entire Counties are between the Head of Chickahomony and King and Queen. Essex, Richmond and Stafford Counties are as much wrong placed.*

He says that York and Rappahannock Rivers issue out of low Marshes, and not from the Mountains as the other Rivers, which note he has taken from some old Maps; but is a false Account from my own View, for I was with our present Governor at the head Spring of both those Rivers, and their Fountains are in the highest Ridge of Mountains.

Pag. 276. *He says, that the Neck of Land between Niccocomoco River and the Bay, is what goes by the Name of the Northern Neck —; whereas it is not above the twentieth Part of the Northern Neck; for that contains all that Tract of Land which is between Rappahannock and Patowmeck Rivers.*

How unfaithful and frontless must such an Historian be, who can upon Guess-work introduce such Falsities for Truth, and bottom them upon such bold Assertions? It would make a Book larger than his

The P R E F A C E.

own to expose his Errors, for even the most general Offices of the Government he misrecites.

Pag. 298. He says, the General Court is call'd the Quarter Court, and is held every Quarter of a Year —; whereas it never was held but three Times a Year, tho' it was called a Quarter Court. When he wrote it was held but twice a Year, as I had wrote in my Book: And has not been called a Quarter Court these 79 Years. The County Courts were never limited in their Jurisdiction to any Summons, neither was the Sheriff ever a Judge in them, as he would have it, but always a ministerial Officer to execute their Process, &c.

The Account that I have given in the following Sheets is plain and true, and if it be not written with so much Judgment, or in so good a Method and Stile as I could wish, yet in the Truth of it I rest fully satisfied. In this Edition I have also retrench'd such Particulars as related only to private Transactions and Characters in the Historical Part; as being too diminutive to be transmitted to Posterity, and set down the Succession of the Governors, with the more general Incidents of their Government, without Reflection upon the private Conduct of any Person.





THE
HISTORY
OF
VIRGINIA.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I.

Shewing what happen'd in the first Attempts to settle Virginia, before the Discovery of Chesapeak Bay.



HE learned and valiant Sir *Walter Raleigh*, having entertain'd some deeper and more serious Considerations upon the State of the Earth, than most other Men of his Time, as may sufficiently appear by his incomparable Book, *The History of the World*: And having laid together the many

many Stories then in *Europe* concerning *America*; the native Beauty, Riches and Value of that Part of the World; and the immense Profits the *Spaniards* drew from a small Settlement or two thereon made; resolv'd upon an Adventure for farther Discoveries.

According to this Purpose, in the Year of our Lord 1653, he got several Men of great Value and Estate to join in an Expedition of this Nature: And for their Encouragement obtain'd Letters Patents from Queen *Elizabeth*, bearing date the 25th of *March*, 1584, for turning their Discoveries to their own Advantage.

§. 2. In *April* following they set out two small Vessels under the Command of Capt. *Philip Amidas*, and Capt. *Arthur Barlow*; who after a prosperous Voyage, anchor'd at the Inlet by *Roenoke*, at present under the Government of *North Carolina*. They made good Profit of the *Indian Truck*, which they bought for things of much inferior Value, and return'd. Being over-pleased with their Profits, and finding all things there entirely new, and surprizing, they gave a very advantageous Account of Matters; by representing the Country so delightful and desirable, so pleasant and plentiful; the Climate and Air so temperate, sweet, and wholesome; the Woods and Soil so charming and fruitful; and all other things so agreeable, that Paradise it self seem'd to be there, in its first native Lustre.

They gave particular Accounts of the Variety of good Fruits, and some whereof they had never seen the like before; especially, that there were Grapes in such abundance, as was never known in the World: Stately tall large Oaks, and other Timber; Red Cedar, Cypress, Pines, and other Evergreens, and Sweetwoods, for Tallness and Large-

Largeness exceeding all they had ever heard of: Wild Fowl, Fish, Deer, and other Game in such Plenty, and Variety, that no Epicure could desire more than this new World did seem naturally to afford.

And to make it yet more desirable, they reported the native *Indians* (which were then the only Inhabitants) so affable, kind, and good-natur'd; so uncultivated in Learning, Trades, and Fashions; so innocent, and ignorant of all manner of Politicks, Tricks, and Cunning; and so desirous of the Company of the *English*: That they seem'd rather to be like soft Wax, ready to take an Impression, than any ways likely to oppose the Settling of the *English* near them. They represented it as a Scene laid open for the good and gracious Queen *Elizabeth*, to propagate the Gospel in, and extend her Dominions over: As if purposely reserv'd for her Majesty, by a peculiar Direction of Providence, that had brought all former Adventures in this Affair to nothing: And to give a further Taste of their Discovery, they took with them, in their Return for *England*, two Men of the native *Indians*, named *Wanchese* and *Manteo*.

§. 3. Her Majesty accordingly took the Hint, and espous'd the Project, as far as her present Engagements in War with *Spain* would let her; being so well pleased with the Account given, that as the greatest Mark of Honour she could do the Discovery, she call'd the Country by the Name of *Virginia*; as well, for that it was first discover'd in her Reign, a Virgin Queen; as it did still seem to retain the Virgin Purity and Plenty of the first Creation, and the People their primitive Innocence: For they seem'd not debauch'd nor corrupted with those Poms and Vanities, which had depraved and enslaved the rest of Mankind; neither were their
Hands

Hands harden'd by Labour, nor their Minds corrupted by the Desire of hoarding up Treasure: They were without Boundaries to their Land; without Property in Cattle; and seem'd to have escaped, or rather not to have been concern'd in the first Curse, *Of getting their Bread by the Sweat of their Brows*: For, by their Pleasure alone, they supplied all their Necessities; namely, by Fishing, Fowling and Hunting; Skins being their only Cloathing; and these too, five sixths of the Year thrown by: Living without Labour, and only gathering the Fruits of the Earth when ripe, or fit for use: Neither fearing present Want, nor solicitous for the future, but daily finding sufficient afresh for their Subsistence.

§. 4. This Report was back'd, nay much advanc'd, by the vast Riches and Treasure mention'd in several Merchants Letters from *Mexico* and *Peru*, to their Correspondents in *Spain*; which Letters were taken with their Ships and Treasure, by some of ours in her Majesty's Service, in Prosecution of the *Spanish* Wars. This was Encouragement enough for a new Adventure, and set Peoples Invention at Work, till they had satisfied themselves, and made sufficient Essays for the farther Discovery of the Country. Pursuant whereunto, Sir *Richard Greenville*, the Chief of Sir *Walter Raleigh's* Associates, having obtain'd seven Sail of Ships, well laden with Provision, Arms, Ammunition, and spare Men to make a Settlement, set out in Person with them early in the Spring of the succeeding Year, to make farther Discoveries, taking back the two *Indians* with him; and according to his Wish, in the latter End of *May*, arriv'd at the same Place, where the *English* had been the Year before; there he made a Settlement, sow'd Beans and Peas, which he saw come up and grow to
Admiration

Admiration while he staid, which was about two Months ; and having made some little Discoveries more in the *Sound* to the Southward, and got some Treasure in Skins, Furs, Pearl, and other Rarities in the Country, for things of inconsiderable Value, he return'd for *England*, leaving one hundred and eight Men upon *Roenoke* Island, under the Command of Mr. *Ralph Lane*, to keep Possession.

§. 5. As soon as Sir *Richard Greenville* was gone, they, according to Order and their own Inclination, set themselves earnestly about discovering the Country, and ranged about a little too indiscreetly up the Rivers, and into the Land backward from the Rivers, which gave the *Indians* a Jealousie of their Meaning: For they cut off several Stragglers of them, and had laid Designs to destroy the rest, but were happily prevented. This put the *English* upon the Precaution of keeping more within Bounds, and not venturing themselves too defenceless Abroad, who till then had depended too much upon the Natives Simplicity and Innocence.

After the *Indians* had done this Mischief, they never observ'd any real Faith towards those *English*: For being naturally suspicious and revengeful themselves, they never thought the *English* could forgive them; and so by this Jealousie, caus'd by the Cowardise of their Nature, they were continually doing Mischief.

The *English*, notwithstanding all this, continued their Discoveries, but more carefully than they had done before, and kept the *Indians* in some Awe, by threatening them with the Return of their Companions again with a greater Supply of Men and Goods: And, before the Cold of the Winter became uneasy, they had extended their Discoveries near an hundred Miles along the Sea-Coast to the

I

North-

Northward; but not reaching the Southern Cape of *Chesapeak Bay* in *Virginia*, they had as yet found no good Harbour.

§. 6. In this Condition they maintain'd their Settlement all the Winter, and till *August* following; but were much distressed for Want of Provisions, not having learn'd to gather Food, as the *Indians* did, nor having Conveniencies like them of taking Fish and Fowl: Besides, being now fallen out with the *Indians*, they fear'd to expose themselves to their Contempt and Cruelty; because they had not received the Supply they talk'd of, and which had been expected in the Spring.

All they could do under these Distresses, and the Despair of the Recruits promised them this Year, was only to keep a good looking out to Seaward, if, perchance, they might find any Means of Escape, or Recruit. And, to their great Joy and Satisfaction, in *August* aforesaid, they happen'd to espy, and make themselves be seen to Sir *Francis Drake's* Fleet, consisting of twenty three Sail, who being sent by her Majesty upon the Coast of *America*, in Search of the *Spanish* Treasures, had Orders from her Majesty to take a View of this Plantation, and see what Assistance and Encouragement it wanted: Their first Petition to him was to grant them a fresh Supply of Men and Provisions, with a small Vessel, and Boats to attend them; that so if they should be put to Distress for want of Relief, they might imbarck for *England*. This was as readily granted by Sir *Francis Drake*, as ask'd by them; and a Ship was appointed them, which Ship they began immediately to fit up, and supply plentifully with all manner of Stores for a long Stay; but while they were a doing this, a great Storm arose, and drove that very Ship (with some others)

others) from her Anchor to Sea, and so she was lost for that Occasion.

Sir *Francis* would have given them another Ship, but this Accident coming on the Back of so many Hardships which they had undergone, daunted them, and put them upon imagining that Providence was averse to their Designs: And now having given over, for that Year, the Expectation of their promised Supply from *England*, they consulted together, and agreed to desire Sir *Francis Drake* to take them along with him, which he did.

Thus their first Intention of Settlement fell, after discovering many things of the natural Growth of the Country, useful for the Life of Man, and beneficial to Trade, they having observ'd a vast Variety of Fish, Fowl and Beasts; Fruits, Seeds, Plants, Roots, Timber-Trees, Sweet-Woods and Gums: They had likewise attain'd some little Knowledge in the Language of the *Indians*, their Religion, Manners, and ways of Correspondence one with another, and been made sensible of their Cunning and Treachery towards themselves.

§. 7. While these things were thus acting in *America*, the Adventurers in *England* were providing, tho' too tediously, to send them Recruits. And tho' it was late before they could dispatch them (for they met with several Disappointments, and had many Squabbles among themselves;) however, at last they provided four good Ships, with all manner of Recruits suitable for the Colony, and Sir *Walter Raleigh* designed to go in Person with them.

Sir *Walter* got his Ship ready first, and fearing the ill Consequence of a Delay, and the Discouragement it might be to those that were left to
make

make a Settlement, he set Sail by himself. And a Fortnight after him Sir *Richard Greenville* sail'd with the three other Ships.

Sir *Walter* fell in with the Land at Cape *Hattoras*, a little to the Southward of the Place, where the 108 Men had been settled, and after Search not finding them, he return'd: However Sir *Richard*, with his Ships, found the Place where he had left the Men, but entirely deserted, which was at first a great disheartening to him, thinking them all destroy'd, because he knew not that Sir *Francis Drake* had been there, and taken them off; but he was a little better satisfied by *Manteo's* Report, that they were not cut off by the *Indians*, tho' he could give no good Account what was become of them. However, notwithstanding this seeming Discouragement, he again left fifty Men in the same Island of *Roenoke*, built them Houses necessary, gave them two Years Provision, and return'd.

§. 8. The next Summer, being *Anno 1587*. three Ships more were sent, under the Command of Mr. *John White*, who himself was to settle there as Governor with more Men, and some Women, carrying also plentiful Recruits of Provisions.

In the latter End of *July* they arrived at *Roenoke* aforesaid, where they again encounter'd the uncomfortable News of the Loss of these Men also; who (as they were inform'd by *Manteo*) were secretly set upon by the *Indians*, some cut off, and the others fled, and not to be heard of, and their Place of Habitation now all grown up with Weeds. However, they repair'd the Houses on *Roenoke*, and sat down there again.

The 13th of *August* they christen'd *Manteo*, and stiled him Lord of *Dassamonpeak*, an *Indian* Nation so call'd, in Reward of the Fidelity he had shewn

to the *English* from the Beginning; who being the first *Indian* that was made a Christian in that Part of the World, I thought it not amiss to remember him.

On the same occasion also may be mention'd the first Child there born of Christian Parentage, viz. a Daughter of Mr. *Ananias Dare*. She was born the 18th of the same *August* upon *Roenoke*, and, after the Name of the Country, was christen'd *Virginia*.

This seem'd to be a Settlement prosperously made, being carry'd on with much Zeal and Unanimity among themselves. The Form of Government consist'd of a Governor and twelve Counsellors, incorporated by the Name of Governor and Assistants of the City of *Raleigh* in *Virginia*.

Many Nations of the *Indians* renew'd their Peace, and made firm Leagues with the Corporation; The chief Men of the *English* also were so far from being dishearten'd at the former Disappointments, that they disputed for the Liberty of remaining on the Spot; and by meer Constraint compell'd Mr. *White*, their Governor, to return for *England*, to negotiate the Business of their Recruits and Supply, as a Man the most capable to manage that Affair, leaving at his Departure one hundred and fifteen in the Corporation.

§. 9. It was above two Years before Mr. *White* could obtain any Grant of Supplies; and then, in the latter End of the Year 1589. he set out from *Plymouth* with three Ships, and sail'd round by the *Western* and *Caribbee* Islands, they having hitherto not found any nearer Way: For tho' they were skill'd in Navigation, and understood the Use of the Globes, yet did Example so much prevail upon them, that they chose to sail a thousand

Leagues about, rather than attempt a more direct Passage.

Towards the Middle of *August*, 1590. they arriv'd upon the Coast, at Cape *Hattoras*, and went to search upon *Roenoke* for the People; but found, by Letters on the Trees, that they were remov'd to *Croatan*, one of the Islands forming the *Sound*, and Southward of *Roenoke* about twenty Leagues, but no sign of Distress. Thither they design'd to sail to them in their Ships; but a Storm arising in the mean while, lay so hard upon them, that their Cables broke; they lost three of their Anchors, were forced to Sea, and so return'd Home, without ever going near those poor People again for sixteen Years following: And it is supposed, that the *Indians* seeing them forsaken by their Country, and unfurnish'd of their expected Supplies, cut them off; for to this Day they were never more heard of.

Thus, after all this vast Expence and Trouble, and the Hazard and Loss of so many Lives, Sir *Walter Raleigh*, the great Projector and Furtherer of these Discoveries and Settlements, being under Trouble, all Thoughts of farther prosecuting these Designs lay dead for about twelve Years following.

§. 10. And then, in the Year 1602, Captain *Gosnell*, who had made one in the former Adventures, furnish'd out a small Bark from *Dartmouth*, and set sail in her himself, with thirty odd Men; designing a more direct Course, and not to stand so far to the Southward, nor pass by the *Caribbee* Islands, as all former Adventurers had done. He attain'd his Ends in that, but touch'd upon the Coast of *America* much to the Northward of any of the Places where the former Adventurers had landed; For he fell first among the Islands, forming the Northern Side of *Massachusetts's Bay* in *New-England*,

England; but not finding the Conveniencies that Harbour affords, set sail again Southward, and, as he thought, clear of Land into the Sea; but fell upon the Bye of *Cape Codd*.

Upon this Coast, and a little to the Southward, he spent some time in Trade with the *Indians*; and gave Names to the Islands of *Martha's Vineyard*, and *Elizabeth's Isle*, which retain the same to this Day. Upon *Elizabeth's Isle* he made an Experiment of *English* Grain, and found it spring up and grow to Admiration, as it had done at *Roe-noke*: Here also his Men built Huts to shelter them in the Nights, and bad Weather; and made good Profit by their *Indian* Traffick of Furs, Skins, &c. And, as their Pleasure invited them, would visit the Main, set Receivers, and save the Gums, and Juices distilling from Sweet-Woods; and try and examine the lesser Vegetables.

After a Month's Stay here, they return'd for *England*, as well pleased with the natural Beauty and Richness of the Place they had view'd, as they were with the Treasure they had gather'd in it: Neither had they a Head, nor a Finger that ach'd among them all the time.

§. 11. The Noise of this short, and most profitable of all the former Voyages, set the *Bristol* Merchants to work also; who early in the Year 1603. sent two Vessels in Search of the same Place and Trade; which Vessels fell luckily in with the same Land. They follow'd the same Methods Captain *Gosnell* had done, and having got a rich Lading, they return'd.

§. 12. In the Year 1605, a Voyage was made from *London* in a single Ship, with which they design'd to fall in with the Land about the Latitude 39°; but the Winds put her a little farther Northward,

ward, and she fell upon the Eastern Parts of *Long-Island* (as it is now call'd, but all went then under the Name of *Virginia*.) Here they traffick'd with the *Indians*, as the others had done before them; made short Trials of the Soil by *English* Grain, and found the *Indians*, as in all other Places, very fair and courteous at first, till they got more Knowledge of the *English*, and perhaps thought themselves over-reach'd, because one bought better Penyworths than another; upon which afterwards they never fail'd to take Revenge as they found their Opportunity or Advantage. So this Company also return'd with the Ship, having ranged forty Miles up *Connecticut* River, and call'd the Harbour where they rid *Penticost* Harbour because of their Arrival there on *Whitsunday*.

In all these latter Voyages, they never so much as endeavour'd to come near the Place where the first Settlement was attempted at Cape *Hattoras*; neither had they any Pity on those poor hundred and fifteen Souls settled there in 1587, of whom there had never since been any Account, no Relief sent to them, nor so much as any Enquiry made after them, whether they were dead or alive, till about three Years after this, when *Chesapeak* Bay in *Virginia* was settled, which hitherto had never been seen by any *Englishman*. So strong was the Desire of Riches, and so eager the Pursuit of a rich Trade, that all Concern for the Lives of their Fellow-Christians, Kindred, Neighbours and Countrymen, weigh'd nothing in the Comparison; tho' an Enquiry might have been easily made, when they were so near them.



C H A P II.

Containing an Account of the first Settlement of Chesapeak Bay, in Virginia, by the Corporation of London Adventurers, and their Proceedings during their Government by a President and Council elective.

§. 13. **T**HE Merchants of *London, Bristol, Exeter and Plymouth*, soon perceived what great Gains might be made of a Trade this Way, if it were well managed, and Colonies could be rightly settled; which was sufficiently evinced by the great Profits some Ships had made, which had not met with ill Accidents. Encouraged by this Prospect, they join'd together in a Petition to King *James the First*; shewing forth, That it would be too much for any single Person to attempt the settling of Colonies, and to carry on so considerable a Trade: They therefore pray'd his Majesty to incorporate them, and enable them to raise a Joint-Stock for that Purpose, and to countenance their Undertaking.

His Majesty did accordingly grant their Petition, and by Letters Patents bearing Date the 10th of *April*, 1606; did in one Patent incorporate them into two distinct Colonies to make two separate Companies, viz. “*Sir Thomas Gates, Sir George Summers, Knights; Mr. Richard Hackluit, Clark, Prebend of Westminster, and Edward-Maria Wingfield, Esq;* Adventurers of the City of *London*, and such others as should be join'd unto them of that Colony, which should be call'd, *The first Colony*; with Liberty to begin their first

“ Plantation and Seat, at any Place upon the Coast
 “ of *Virginia*, where they should think fit and con-
 “ venient, between the Degrees of 34 and 41 of
 “ Northern Latitude: And that they should ex-
 “ tend their Bounds from the said first Seat of their
 “ Plantation and Habitation, fifty *English* Miles
 “ along the Sea-Coast each Way; and include all
 “ the Lands within an hundred Miles directly
 “ over-against the same Sea-Coast, and also back
 “ into the Main-Land one hundred Miles from
 “ the Sea-Coast: And that no other should be
 “ permitted or suffer’d to plant or inhabit behind,
 “ or on the Back of them towards the Main-
 “ Land, without the expresse License of the Coun-
 “ cil of that Colony thereunto in Writing first
 “ had and obtain’d. And for the second Colony,
 “ *Thomas Hanham, Rawleigh Gilbert, William Par-*
 “ *ker, and George Popham*, Esquires, of the Town
 “ of *Plymouth*, and all others who should be join’d
 “ to them of that Colony, with Liberty to begin
 “ their first Plantation and Seat at any Place upon
 “ the Coast of *Virginia*, where they should think
 “ fit, between the Degrees of 38 and 45 of Nor-
 “ thern Latitude, with the like Liberties and
 “ Bounds as the first Colony: Provided they did
 “ not seat within an hundred Miles of them.

§. 14. By Virtue of this Patent, Capt. *John*
Smith was sent by the *London* Company in *December*,
 1606, on his Voyage with three small Ships; and
 a Commission was given to him, and to several other
 Gentlemen, to establish a Colony, and to govern
 by a President, to be chosen annually, and Coun-
 cil, who should be invested with sufficient Au-
 thorities and Powers. And now all Things seem’d
 to promise a Plantation in good Earnest. Provi-
 dence seem’d likewise very favourable to them:
 For tho’ they designed only for that Part of *Virginia*
 where

where the hundred and fifteen were left, and where there is no Security of Harbour : Yet, after a tedious Voyage of passing the old Way again, between the *Caribbee* Islands and the Main, he, with two of his Vessels, luckily fell in with *Virginia* it self, that Part of the Continent now so call'd, anchoring in the Mouth of the Bay of *Chesapeake*; and the first Place they landed upon was the Southern Cape of that Bay; this they named *Cape Henry*, and the Northern *Cape Charles*, in Honour of the King's two eldest Sons; and the first great River they search'd, whose *Indian* Name was *Powhatan*, they call'd *James River*, after the King's own Name.

§. 15. Before they would make any Settlement here, they made a full Search of *James River*; and then by an unanimous Consent pitched upon a *Peninsula*, about fifty Miles up the River; which besides the Goodness of the Soil, was esteem'd as most fit, and capable to be made a Place both of Trade and Security, two Thirds thereof being environ'd by the main River, which affords good Anchorage all along; and the other Third by a small narrow River, capable of receiving many Vessels of an hundred Tun, quite up as high as till it meets within thirty Yards of the main River again, and where generally in Spring-Tides it overflows into the main River: By which means the Land they chose to pitch their Town upon has obtain'd the Name of an Island. In this back River Ships and small Vessels may ride lashed to one another, and moor'd a-shore secure from all Wind and Weather whatsoever.

The Town, as well as the River, had the Honour to be called by King *James's* Name. The whole Island thus enclosed contains about two thousand Acres of high Land, and several thou-

lands of very good and firm Marsh, and is an extraordinary good Pasture as any in that Country.

By means of the narrow Passage, this Place was of great Security to them from the *Indian* Enemy: And if they had then known of the Biting of the Worm in the Salts, they would have valued this Place upon that Account also, as being free from that Mischief.

§. 16. They were no sooner settled in all this Happiness and Security, but they fell into Jarrs and Dissentions among themselves, by a greedy grasping at the *Indian* Treasure, envying and overreaching one another in that Trade.

After five Weeks Stay before this Town, the Ships return'd Home again, leaving one hundred and eight Men settled in the Form of Government before spoken of.

After the Ships were gone, the same sort of Feuds and Disorders happen'd continually among them, to the unspeakable Damage of the Plantation.

The *Indians* were the same there as in all other Places, at first very fair and friendly, tho' afterwards they gave great Proofs of their Deceitfulness. However, by the Help of the *Indian* Provisions, the *English* chiefly subsisted till the Return of the Ships the next Year; when two Vessels were sent thither full freighted with Men and Provisions for Supply of the Plantation, one of which only arriv'd directly, and the other being beat off to the *Caribbee* Islands, did not arrive till the former was sail'd again for *England*.

§. 17. In the Interval of these Ships returning from *England*, the *English* had a very advantageous Trade with the *Indians*; and might have made much greater Gains of it, and managed it both to
the

the greater Satisfaction of the *Indians*, and the greater Ease and Security of themselves, if they had been under any Rule, or subject to any Method in Trade, and not left at Liberty to outvie or outbid one another, by which they not only cut short their own Profit, but created Jealousies and Disturbances among the *Indians*, by letting one have a better Bargain than another: For they being unaccustom'd to barter, such of them as had been hardest dealt by in their Commodities, thought themselves cheated and abused; and so conceiv'd a Grudge against the *English* in general, making it a national Quarrel: And this seems to be the original Cause of most of their subsequent Misfortunes by the *Indians*.

What also gave a greater Interruption to this Trade, was an Object that drew all their Eyes and Thoughts aside, even from taking the necessary Care for their Preservation, and for the Support of their Lives; which was this; They found in a Neck of Land, on the Back of *James-Town-Island*, a fresh Stream of Water springing out of a small Bank, which wash'd down with it a yellow sort of Dust-Isinglass, which being cleansed by the fresh streaming of the Water, lay shining in the Bottom of that limpid Element, and stirr'd up in them an unseasonable and inordinate Desire after Riches: For they taking all to be Gold that glister'd, run into the utmost Distraction, neglecting both the necessary Defence of their Lives from the *Indians*, and the Support of their Bodies by securing of Provisions; absolutely relying, like *Midas*, upon the Almighty Power of Gold, thinking, that where this was in Plenty, nothing could be wanting: But they soon grew sensible of their Error, and found that if this gilded Dirt had been real Gold, it could have been of no Advantage to them. For, by their Negligence, they were reduced to an exceeding

ceeding Scarcity of Provisions, and that little they had was lost by the burning of their Town, while all Hands were employ'd upon this imaginary golden Treasure; so that they were forced to live for some time upon the wild Fruits of the Earth, and upon Crabs, Muscles, and such like, not having a Day's Provision before-hand; as some of the laziest *Indians*, who have no Pleasure in Exercise, and won't be at the Pains to fish and hunt: And, indeed, not so well as they neither; for by this careless neglecting of their Defence against the *Indians*, many of them were destroy'd by that cruel People; and the rest durst not venture Abroad, but were forced to be content with what fell just into their Mouths.

§. 18. In this Condition they were, when the first Ship of the two before-mention'd came to their Assistance, but their golden Dreams overcame all Difficulties: They spoke not, nor thought of any thing but Gold, and that was all the Lading that most of them were willing to take care for; accordingly they put into this Ship all the yellow Dirt they had gathered, and what Skins and Furs they had trucked for, and filling her up with Cedar, sent her away.

After she was gone, the other Ship arrived, which they stowed likewise with this supposed Gold-Dust, designing never to be poor again; filling her up with Cedar and Clap-board.

Those two Ships being thus dispatched, they made several Discoveries in *James River*, and up *Chesapeak Bay*, by the Undertaking and Management of Capt. *John Smith*: And the Year 1608 was the first Year in which they gather'd *Indian* Corn of their own Planting.

While

While these Discoveries were making by Capt. *Smith*, Matters run again into Confusion in *James Town*; and several uneasie People, taking Advantage of his Absence, attempted to desert the Settlement, and run away with the small Vessel that was left to attend upon it; for Capt. *Smith* was the only Man among them that could manage the Discoveries with Success, and he was the only Man too that could keep the Settlement in Order. Thus the *English* continued to give themselves as much Perplexity by their own Distraction, as the *Indians* did by their Watchfulness and Resentments.

§. 19. Anno 1609, *John Laydon* and *Anna Burrows* were marry'd together, the first Christian Marriage in that Part of the World; and the Year following the Plantation was increased to near five hundred Men.

This Year *James Town* sent out People, and made two other Settlements; one at *Nansamond* in *James River*, above thirty Miles below *James Town*, and the other at *Powhatan*, six Miles below the Falls of *James River*, (which last was bought of *Powhatan* for a certain Quantity of Copper,) each Settlement consisting of about a hundred and twenty Men. Some small Time after another was made at *Kiquotan* by the Mouth of *James River*.



C A H P. III.

Shewing what happen'd after the Alteration of the Government from an elective President to a commissioned Governor, until the Dissolution of the Company.

§. 20. **I**N the mean while the Treasurer, Council, and Company of *Virginia* Adventurers in *London*, not finding that Return and Profit from the Adventurers they expected; and rightly judging that this Disappointment, as well as the idle Quarrels in the Colony proceeded from a Mismanage of Government; petition'd his Majesty, and got a new Patent with leave to appoint a Governor.

Upon this new Grant they sent out nine Ships, and plentiful Supplies of Men and Provisions; and made three joint Commissioners or Governors in equal Power, *viz.* Sir *Thomas Gates*, Sir *George Summers*, and Capt. *Newport*. They agreed to go all together in one Ship.

This Ship, on Board of which the three Governors had embarked, being separated from the rest, was put to great Distress in a severe Storm; and after three Days and Nights constant Baling and Pumping, was at last cast a-shore at *Bermudas*, and there staved, but by good Providence the Company was preserved.

Notwithstanding this Shipwreck, and Extremity they were put to, yet could not this common Misfortune make them agree. The best of it was, they found Plenty of Provisions in that Island, and no *Indians* to annoy them: But still they quarrell'd
amongst

amongst themselves, and none more than the two Knights; who made their Parties, built each of them a Cedar Vessel, one call'd the *Patience*, the other the *Deliverance*, and used what they gather'd of the Furniture of the old Ship for Rigging; and Fish-oil, and Hogs-grease mix'd with Lime and Ashes, instead of Pitch and Tar: For they found great Plenty of *Spanish* Hogs in this Island, which are supposed to have swam a-shore from some Wrecks, and there afterwards increased.

§. 21. While these Things were acting in *Bermudas*, Capt. *Smith* being very much burnt by the accidental firing of some Gun-powder, as he was upon a Discovery in his Boat, was forced for his Cure sake, and the Benefit of a Surgeon, to take his Passage for *England* in a Ship that was then upon the Point of sailing.

Several of the nine Ships that came out with the three Governors arrived, with many of the Passengers; some of which in their Humours wou'd not submit to the Government there, pretending the new Commission destroy'd the old one; that Governors were appointed instead of a President, and that they themselves were to be of the Council, and so wou'd assume an independent Power, inspiring the People with Disobedience; by which Means they became frequently expos'd in great Parties to the Cruelty of the *Indians*; all Sorts of Discipline was laid aside, and their necessary Defence neglected; so that the *Indians* taking Advantage of those Divisions, form'd a Stratagem to destroy them Root and Branch, and indeed they did cut many of 'em off, by massacring whole Companies at a time; so that all the Out-settlements were deserted, and the People that were not destroy'd took Refuge in *James Town*, except the small Settlement at *Kiquotan*, where they had built them-

themselves a little Fort, and call'd it *Algernoon* Fort : And yet, for all this, they continued their Disorders, wasting their old Provisions, and neglecting to gather others; so that they who remain'd alive were all near famish'd, having brought themselves to that pass, that they durst not stir from their own Doors to gather the Fruits of the Earth, or the Crabs and Muscles from the Water-side: Much less to hunt or catch wild Beasts, Fish or Fowl, which were found in great Abundance there. They continued in these scanty Circumstances till they were at last reduced to such Extremity, as to eat the very Hides of their Horses, and the Bodies of the *Indians* they had killed; and sometimes also upon a pinch they wou'd not disdain to dig them up again to make a homely Meal of, after they had been buried.

Thus a few Months indiscreet Management brought such an Infamy upon the Country, that to this Day it cannot be wiped away: And the Sicknesses occasion'd by this bad Diet, or rather want of Diet, are unjustly remember'd to the Disadvantage of the Country, as a Fault in the Climate; which was only the Foolishness and Indiscretion of those who assumed the Power of governing. I call it assumed, because the new Commission mention'd, by which they pretended to be of the Council, was not in all this Time arrived, but remain'd in *Bermudas* with the new Governors.

Here I cannot but admire the Care, Labour, Courage and Understanding that Capt. *John Smith* shew'd in the Time of his Administration; who not only founded, but also preserved all these Settlements in good Order, while he was amongst them: And, without him, they had certainly all been destroy'd, either by Famine, or the Enemy long before; tho' the Country naturally afforded Subsistence enough, even without any other Labour

bour than that of gathering and preserving its spontaneous Provisions.

For the first three Years that Capt. *Smith* was with them, they never had in that whole Time above six Months *English* Provisions. But as soon as he had left 'em to themselves, all went to Ruin; for the *Indians* had no longer any Fear for themselves, or Friendship for the *English*. And six Months after this Gentleman's Departure, the 500 Men that he left were reduced to threescore; and they too must of Necessity have starved, if their Relief had been delay'd a Week longer at Sea.

§. 22. In the mean time, the three Governors put to Sea from *Bermudas* in their two small Vessels, with their Company, to the Number of one hundred and fifty, and in fourteen Days, viz. the 25th of May, 1610. they arrived both together in *Virginia*, and went with their Vessels up to *James Town*, where they found the small Remainder of the five hundred Men, in that melancholy Way I just now hinted.

§. 23. Sir *Thomas Gates*, Sir *George Summers*, and Capt. *Newport*, the Governors, were vere compassionate of their Condition, and call'd a Council, wherein they inform'd them, that they had but sixteen Days Provision Aboard; and therefore desired to know their Opinion, whether they would venture to Sea under such a Scarcity; or, if they resolved to continue in the Settlement, and take their Fortunes, they would stay likewise, and share the Provisions among them; but desired that their Determination might be speedy. They soon came to the Conclusion of returning for *England*: But because their Provisions were short, they resolved to go by the Banks of *Newfoundland*, in hopes of meeting with some of the Fishermen,

(this being now the Season) and dividing themselves among their Ships for the greater Certainty of Provision, and for their better Accommodation.

According to this Resolution, they all went Aboard, and fell down to *Hog Island* the 9th of *June* at Night, and the next Morning to *Mulberry Island Point*, which is eighteen Miles below *James Town*, and thirty above the Mouth of the River; and there they spied a Long-Boat, which the Lord *Delawar* (who was just arrived with three Ships) had sent before him up the River founding the Channel. His Lordship was made sole Governor, and was accompanied by several Gentlemen of Condition. He caused all the Men to return again to *James Town*; resettled them with Satisfaction, and staid with them till *March* following; and then being very sick, he return'd for *England*, leaving about two hundred in the Colony.

§. 24. On the 10th of *May*, 1611, Sir *Thomas Dale* being then made Governor, arriv'd with three Ships, which brought Supplies of Men, Cattle and Hogs. He found them growing again into the like Disorders as before, taking no Care to plant Corn, and wholly relying upon their Store, which then had but three Months Provision in it. He therefore set them to work about Corn, and tho' it was the Middle of *May* before they began to prepare the Ground, yet they had an indifferent good Crop.

§. 25. In *August* the same Year Sir *Thomas Gates* arriv'd at *James Town* with six Ships more, and with a plentiful Supply of Hogs, Cattle, Fowls, &c. with a good Quantity of Ammunition, and all other Things necessary for a new Colony, and besides this a Reinforcement of three hundred and fifty chosen Men. In the Beginning of *September*

tember he settled a new Town at *Arrabattuck*, about fifty Miles above *James Town*, paling in the Neck above two Miles from the Point, from one Reach of the River to the other. Here he built Forts and Centry-Boxes, and in Honour of *Henry Prince of Wales*, call'd it *Henrico*. And also run a Palisado on the other Side of the River at *Coxendale*, to secure their Hogs.

§. 26. *Anno 1612*, Two Ships more arriv'd with Supplies: And Capt. *Argall*, who commanded one of them, being sent in her to *Patowmeck* to buy Corn, he there met with *Pocahontas*, the excellent Daughter of *Powhatan*; and having prevail'd with her to come Aboard to a Treat, he detain'd her Prisoner, and carried her to *James Town*, designing to make Peace with her Father by her Release: But on the contrary, that Prince resented the Affront very highly; and although he loved his Daughter with all imaginable Tenderness, yet he would not be brought to Terms by that unhandsome Treachery; till about two Years after a Marriage being propos'd between Mr. *John Rolfe*, an *English* Gentleman, and this Lady; which *Powhatan* taking to be a sincere Token of Friendship, he vouchsafed to consent to it, and to conclude a Peace, tho' he would not come to the Wedding.

§. 27. *Pocahontas* being thus married in the Year 1613, a firm Peace was concluded with her Father. Both the *English* and *Indians* thought themselves intirely secure and quiet. This brought in the *Chickahomony Indians* also, tho' not out of any Kindness or Respect to the *English*, but out of Fear of being, by their Assistance, brought under *Powhatan's* absolute Subjection, who used now and then to threaten and tyrannize over them.

§. 28. *Sir Thomas Dale* returning for *England*, Anno 1616, took with him *Mr. Rolf* and his Wife *Pocahontas*, who, upon the Marriage, was christen'd and call'd *Rebecka*. He left *Capt. George Yardly* Deputy-Governor during his Absence, the Country being then intirely at Peace; and arriv'd at *Plymouth* the 12th of *June*.

Capt. John Smith was at that time in *England*, and hearing of the Arrival of *Pocahontas* at *Portsmouth*, used all the Means he could to express his Gratitude to her, as having formerly preserv'd his Life by the Hazard of her own: For, when by the Command of her Father, *Capt. Smith's* Head was upon the Block to have his Brains knock'd out, she saved his Head by laying hers close upon it. He was at that Time suddenly to imbarck for *New-England*, and fearing he should fail before she got to *London*, he made an humble Petition to the Queen in her Behalf, which I here choose to give you in his own Words, because it will save me the Story at large.

§. 29. *Capt. Smith's PETITION to Her Majesty, in Behalf of Pocahontas, Daughter to the Indian Emperor Powhatan.*

To the most High and Vertuous Princess,
Queen ANNE of Great Britain.

Most Admir'd Madam,

THE Love I bear my God, my King, and Country, bath so often embolden'd me in the worst of extream Dangers, that now Honestly doth constrain

strain me to presume thus far beyond my self; to present your Majesty this short Discourse. If Ingratitude be a deadly Poison to all honest Virtues, I must be guilty of that Crime, if I should omit any Means to be thankful.

So it was,

That about Ten Years ago, being in Virginia, and taken Prisoner by the Power of Powhatan, their chief King, I receiv'd from this great Savage exceeding great Courtesie, especially from his Son Nantaquaus; the manliest, comeliest, boldest Spirit I ever saw in a Savage; and his Sister Pocahontas, the King's most dear and well-beloved Daughter, being but a Child of Twelve or Thirteen Years of Age, whose compassionate pitiful Heart of my desperate Estate gave me much Cause to respect her. I being the first Christian this proud King and his grim Attendants ever saw, and thus inthrall'd in their barbarous Power; I cannot say I felt the least occasion of Want, that was in the Power of those my mortal Foes to prevent, notwithstanding all their Threats. After some six Weeks sitting amongst those Savage Courtiers, at the Minute of my Execution she hazarded the beating out of her own Brains to save mine, and not only that, but so prevail'd with her Father, that I was safely conducted to James Town, where I found about eight and thirty miserable, poor and sick Creatures to keep Possession for all those large Territories of Virginia. Such was the Weakness of this poor Commonwealth, as had not the Savages fed us, we directly had starv'd.

And this Relief, most Gracious Queen, was commonly brought us by this Lady Pocahontas, notwithstanding all these Passages, when unconstant Fortune turn'd our Peace to War, this tender Virgin would still not spare to dare to visit us; and by her our Fears have been oft appeased, and our Wants still supplied. Were it the Policy of her Father thus to em-

ploy her, or the Ordinance of God thus to make her his Instrument, or her extraordinary Affection to our Nation, I know not : But of this I am sure, when her Father, with the utmost of his Policy and Power, sought to surprize me, having but eighteen with me, the dark Night could not affright her from coming through the irksome Woods, and, with water'd Eyes, give me Intelligence, with her best Advice to escape his Fury ; which had he known, he had surely slain her.

James Town, with her wild Train, she as freely frequented as her Father's Habitation ; and during the Time of two or three Years, she, next under God, was still the Instrument to preserve this Colony from Death, Famine, and utter Confusion, which if, in those Times, had once been dissolv'd, Virginia might have lain, as it was at our first Arrival, till this Day. Since then, this Business having been turn'd and varied by many Accidents from what I left it, it is most certain, after a long and troublesome War, since my Departure, betwixt her Father and our Colony, all which Time she was not heard of, about two Years after she herself was taken Prisoner, being so detain'd near two Years longer, the Colony by that means was reliev'd, Peace concluded, and at last, rejecting her barbarous Condition, she was married to an English Gentleman, with whom at this present she is in England. The first Christian ever of that Nation : The first Virginian ever spake English, or had a Child in Marriage by an Englishman. A Matter surely, if my Meaning be truly consider'd and well understood, worthy a Prince's Information.

Thus, most Gracious Lady, I have related to your Majesty what at your best Leisure our approv'd Histories will recount to you at large, as done in the Time of your Majesty's Life : And, however this might be presented you from a more worthy Pen, it cannot from a more honest Heart.

As yet I never beg'd any thing of the State ; and it is my want of Ability, and her exceeding Desert ; your Birth, Means, and Authority ; her Birth, Vertue, Want and Simplicity, doth make me thus bold, humbly to beseech your Majesty to take this Knowledge of her, tho' it be from one so unworthy to be the Reporter as my self : Her Husband's Estate not being able to make her fit to attend your Majesty.

The most and least I can do, is to tell you this, and the rather because of her being of so great a Spirit, however her Stature. If she should not be well receiv'd, seeing this Kingdom may rightly have a Kingdom by her Means ; her present Love to us and Christianity, might turn to such Scorn and Fury, as to divert all this Good to the worst of Evil : Where finding that so great a Queen should do her more Honour than she can imagine, for having been kind to her Subjects and Servants, 'twould so ravish her with Content, as to endear her dearest Blood to effect that your Majesty and all the King's honest Subjects most earnestly Desire. And so I humbly kiss your gracious Hands, &c.

(Sign'd)

Dated June, 1616.

John Smith.

§. 30. This Account was presented to her Majesty, and graciously received: But before Captain Smith sail'd for New-England, the Indian Princess arrived at London, and her Husband took Lodgings for her at Branford, to be a little out of the Smoak of the City, whither Captain Smith, with some of his Friends, went to see her and congratulate her Arrival, letting her know the Address he had made to the Queen in her Favour.

Till this Lady arriv'd in *England*, she had all along been inform'd that Captain *Smith* was dead, because he had been diverted from that Colony by making Settlements in the Second Plantation, now call'd *New-England*: For which Reason, when she saw him, she seem'd to think herself much affronted, for that they had dared to impose so gross an Untruth upon her, and at first Sight of him turn'd away. It cost him a great deal of Intreaty, and some Hours Attendance, before she would do him the Honour to speak to him: But at last she was reconcil'd, and talk'd freely to him. She put him in Mind of her former Kindnesses, and then upbraided him for his Forgetfulness of her, shewing by her Reproaches, that even a State of Nature teaches to abhor Ingratitude.

She had in her Retinue a *Werowance* or great Man of her own Nation, whose Name was *Utta-maccomack*: This Man had Orders from *Powhatan*, to count the People in *England*, and give him an account of their Number. Now the *Indians* having no Letters among them, he at his going ashore provided a Stick, in which he was to make a Notch for every Man he saw; but this Accomptant soon grew weary of that tedious Exercise, and threw his Stick away: And at his Return, being asked by his King, *How many People there were?* He desired him to count the Stars in the Sky, the Leaves upon the Trees, and the Sand on the Seashore, for so many People (he said) were in *England*.

§. 31. *Pocahontas* had many Honours done her by the Queen upon Account of Captain *Smith's* Story; and being introduced by the Lady *Dela-warr*, she was frequently admitted to wait on her Majesty, and was publickly treated as a Prince's Daughter; she was carried to many Plays, Balls, and

and other public Entertainments, and very respectfully receiv'd by all the Ladies about the Court. Upon all which Occasions she behaved her self with so much Decency, and shew'd so much Grandeur in her Deportment, that she made good the brightest Part of the Character Captain *Smith* had given of her. In the mean while she gain'd the good Opinion of every Body so much, that the poor Gentleman her Husband had like to have been call'd to an Account for presuming to marry a Princess Royal without the King's Consent; because it had been suggested that he had taken Advantage of her being a Prisoner, and forc'd her to marry him. But upon a more perfect Representation of the Matter, his Majesty was pleas'd at last to declare himself satisfied. But had their true Condition here been known, that Pother had been saved.

Every Body paid this young Lady all imaginable Respect; and it is supposed, she would have sufficiently acknowledged those Favours, had she lived to return to her own Country, by bringing the *Indians* to have a kinder Disposition towards the *English*. But upon her Return she was unfortunately taken ill at *Gravesend*, and died in a few Days after, giving great Testimony all the Time she lay sick, of her being a very good Christian. She left Issue one Son, nam'd *Thomas Rolfe*, whose Posterity is at this Day in good Repute in *Virginia*, and now hold Lands by Descent from her.

§. 32. Captain *Yardly* made but a very ill Governor, he let the Buildings and Forts go to Ruine; not regarding the Security of the People against the *Indians*, neglecting the Corn, and applying all Hands to plant Tobacco, which promised the most immediate Gain. In this Condition they were when Captain *Samuel Argall* was sent thither Governor,

vernor, *Anno* 1617. who found the Number of People reduc'd to little more than four hundred, of which not above half were fit for Labour. In the mean while the *Indians* mixing among 'em, got Experience daily in Fire-Arms, and some of them were instructed therein by the *English* themselves, and employ'd to hunt and kill Wild Fowl for them. So great was their Security upon this Marriage: But Governor *Argall* not liking those Methods, regulated them on his Arrival, and Captain *Yardly* return'd to *England*.

§. 33. Governor *Argall* made the Colony flourish and increase wonderfully, and kept them in great Plenty and Quiet. The next Year, *viz.* *Anno* 1618, the Lord *Delawarr* was sent over again with two hundred Men more for the Settlement, with other Necessaries suitable: But sailing by the Western Islands, they met with contrary Winds, and great Sickneſs; ſo that about thirty of them died, among which the Lord *Delawarr* was one. By which Means the Government there ſtill continued in the Hands of Captain *Argall*.

§. 34. *Powhatan* died in *April* the ſame Year, leaving his ſecond Brother *Itopatin* in Poſſeſſion of his Empire, a Prince far ſhort of the Parts of *Oppechananough*, who by ſome was ſaid to be his elder Brother, and then King of *Chickahomony*; but he having debauch'd them from the Allegiance of *Powhatan*, was diſinherited by him. This *Oppechananough* was a cunning and a brave Prince, and ſoon graſp'd all the Empire to himſelf: But at firſt they jointly renew'd the Peace with the *English*, upon the Acceſſion of *Itopatin* to the Crown.

§. 35. Governor *Argall* flourishing thus under the Blessings of Peace and Plenty, and having no Occasion of Fear or Disturbance from the *Indians*, sought new Occasions of encouraging the Plantation. To that End he intended a coasting Voyage to the Northward, to view the Places where the *English* Ships had so often laded; and if he miss'd them, to reach the Fisheries on the Banks of *Newfoundland*, and so settle a Trade and Correspondence either with the one or the other. In accomplishing whereof, as he touch'd at *Cape Codd*, he was inform'd by the *Indians*, That some white People like him were come to inhabit to the Northward of them, upon the Coast of their neighbouring Nations. Captain *Argall* not having heard of any *English* Plantation that Way, was jealous that it might be (as it proved) the People of some other Nation. And being very zealous for the Honour and Benefit of *England*, he resolved to make Search according to the Information he had receiv'd, and see who they were. Accordingly he found the Settlement, and a Ship riding before it. This belong'd to some *Frenchmen*, who had fortified themselves upon a small Mount on the North of *New-England*.

§. 36. His unexpected Arrival so confounded the *French*, that they could make no Preparation for Resistance on Board their Ship; which Captain *Argall* drew so close to, that with his small Arms he beat all the Men from the Deck, so that they could not use their Guns, their Ship having only a single Deck. Among others, there were two Jesuits on Board, one of which being more bold than wise, with all that Disadvantage, endeavour'd to fire one of their Cannon, and was shot dead for his Pains.

Captain

Captain *Argall* having taken the Ship, landed and went before the Fort, summoning it to surrender. The Garrison ask'd Time to advise: But that being denied them, they stole privately away, and fled into the Woods. Upon this Captain *Argall* enter'd the Fort, and lodged there that Night; and the next Day the *French* came to him, and surrender'd themselves. It seems the King of *France* had granted them a Patent for this Settlement, but they gave it up to Captain *Argall* to be cancell'd. He us'd them very well, and suffer'd such as had a Mind to return to *France*, to seek their Passage among the Ships of the Fishery: But oblig'd them to desert this Settlement. And those that were willing to go to *Virginia*, he took with him.

§. 37. These People were under the Conduct of two Jesuits, who upon taking a Pique against their Governor in *Acadia*, named *Biencourt*, had lately separated from a *French* Settlement at *Port-Royal*, lying in the Bay, upon the South-West Part of *Acadia*.

§. 38. As Governor *Argall* was about to return to *Virginia*, Father *Biard*, the surviving Jesuit (out of Malice to *Biencourt*) told him of this *French* Settlement at *Port-Royal*, and offer'd to pilot him to it; which Governor *Argall* readily accepted of. With the same Ease he took that Settlement also; where the *French* had sow'd and reap'd, built Barns, Mills, and other Conveniences, which Captain *Argall* did no Damage to: But unsettled them, and oblig'd them to make a Desertion from thence. He gave these the same Leave he had done the others to dispose of themselves; some whereof return'd to *France*, and others went to settle up the River of *Canada*. After

ter this Governor *Argall* return'd satisfied with the Provision and Plunder he had got in those two Settlements.

§. 39. The Report of these Exploits soon reach'd *England*; and whether they were approved or no, being acted without particular Direction, I have not learn'd: But certain it is, that in *April* following there arriv'd a small Vessel, which did not stay for any thing, but took on Board Governor *Argall*, and return'd for *England*. He left Captain *Nathaniel Powel* Deputy: And soon after Captain *Yardly* being Knighted, was sent Governor thither again.

§. 40. Very great Supplies of Cattle and other Provisions were sent there that Year, and likewise 1000 or 1200 Men. They resettled all their old Plantations that had been deserted, made Additions to the Number of the Council, and call'd an Assembly of Burgesses from all Parts of the Country, which were to be elected by the People in their several Plantations.

These Burgesses met the Governor and Council at *James Town* in *May*, 1620, and sat in Consultation in the same House with them, as the Method of the *Scots* Parliament is, debating Matters for the Improvement and good Government of the Country.

This was the first General Assembly that ever was held there. I heartily wish, tho' they did not unite their Houses again, they would however unite their Endeavours and Affections for the Good of the Country.

§. 41. In *August* following a *Dutch* Man of War landed twenty *Negroes* for Sale; which
were

were the first of that kind that were carried into the Country.

§. 42. This Year they bounded the Corporations, (as they call'd them :) But there does not remain among the Records any one Grant of these Corporations. There is enter'd a Testimony of Governor *Argall*, concerning the Bounds of the Corporation of *James City*, declaring his Knowledge thereof; and this is one of the new transcribed Books of Records: But there is not to be found one Word of the Charter or Patent it self of this Corporation.

Then also they apportion'd and laid our Lands in several Allotments, *viz.* to the Company in several Places, to the Governor, to a College, to *Glebes*, and to several particular Persons; many new Settlements were made in *James* and *York Rivers*. The People knew their own Property, and having the Encouragement of working for their own Advantage, many became very industrious, and began to vie one with another, in Planting, Building, and other Improvements. Two Gentlemen went over as Deputies to the Company, for the Management of their Lands, and those of the College. All Thoughts of Danger from the *Indians* were laid aside. Several great Gifts were made to the Church and College, and for the bringing up young *Indians* at School. Forms were made, and Rules appointed for granting Patents for Land, upon the Condition of importing Goods and Persons to supply and increase the Colony. And all there then began to think themselves the happiest People in the World.

§. 43. Thus *Virginia* continued to flourish and increase, great Supplies continually arriving, and new Settlements being made all over the Country.

A Salt-

A Salt-work was set up at Cape *Charles*, on the Eastern Shore; and an Iron-Work at *Falling-Creek*, in *James River*, where they made Proof of good Iron Oar, and brought the whole Work so near a Perfection, that they writ Word to the Company in *London*, that they did not doubt but to finish the Work, and have plentiful Provision of Iron for them by the next *Easter*. At that time the Fame of the Plenty and Riches, in which the *English* liv'd there, was very great: And Sir *George Yardly* now had all the Appearance of making Amends for the Errors of his former Government. Nevertheless he let them run into the same Sleepyness and Security as before, neglecting all Thoughts of a necessary Defence, which laid the Foundation of the following Calamities.

§. 44. But the time of his Government being near expired, Sir *Francis Wyat*, then a young Man, had a Commission to succeed him. The People began to grow numerous, thirteen hundred settling there that Year; which was the Occasion of making so much Tobacco, as to overstock the Market. Wherefore his Majesty, out of Pity to the Country, sent his Commands, That they should not suffer their Planters to make above one hundred Pounds of Tobacco *per Man*; for the Market was so low, that he could not afford to give them above three Shillings the Pound for it. He advised them rather to turn their spare Time towards providing Corn and Stock, and towards the making of Pot-ash, or other Manufactures.

It was *October 1621*, that Sir *Francis Wyat* arrived Governor, and in *November* Captain *Newport* arrived with fifty Men imported at his own Charge, besides Passengers; and made a Plantation on *Newport's News*, naming it after himself. The Governor made a Review of all the Settlements,
and

and suffer'd new ones to be made, even as far as *Patawmeck* River. This ought to be observ'd of the Eastern Shore *Indians*, that they never gave the *English* any Trouble, but courted and befriended them from first to last. Perhaps the *English*, by the time they came to settle those Parts, had consider'd how to rectify their former Mismanagement, and learn'd better Methods of regulating their Trade with the *Indians*, and of treating them more kindly than at first.

§. 45. *Anno* 1622, Inferior Courts were first appointed by the General Assembly, under the Name of *County Courts*, for Tryal of minute Causes; the Governor and Council still remaining Judges of the Supream Court of the Colony. In the mean time, by the great Increase of People, and the long Quiet they had enjoy'd among the *Indians*, since the Marriage of *Pocahontas*, and the Accession of *Oppechancanough* to the Imperial Crown, all Men were lull'd into a fatal Security, and became every where familiar with the *Indians*, eating, drinking and sleeping amongst them; by which means they became perfectly acquainted with all our *English* Strength, and the Use of our Arms: Knowing at all times, when and where to find our People; whether at Home, or in the Woods; in Bodies, or disperst; in Condition of Defence, or indefensible. This exposing of their Weakness gave them Occasion to think more contemptibly of them, than otherwise, perhaps, they would have done; for which Reason they became more peevish, and more hardy to attempt any thing against them.

§. 46. Thus upon the Loss of one of their leading Men, (a War Captain, as they call him) who was likewise supposed to be justly kill'd, *Oppechancanough* took Affront, and in Revengelaid the
Plot

Plot of a general Massacre of the *English*, to be executed on the 22^d of *March*, 1622, a little before Noon, at a time when our Men were all at Work abroad in their Plantations, disperst and unarm'd. This hellish Contrivance was to take Effect upon all the several Settlements at one and the same Instant, except on the Eastern Shore, whither this Plot did not reach. The *Indians* had been made so familiar with the *English*, as to borrow their Boats and Canoes to cross the River in, when they went to consult with their neighbouring *Indians* upon this execrable Conspiracy. And to colour their Design the better, they brought Presents of Deer, Turkies, Fish and Fruits to the *English* the Evening before. The very Morning of the Massacre, they came freely and unarm'd among them, eating with them, and behaving themselves with the same Freedom and Friendship as formerly, till the very Minute they were to put their Plot in Execution. Then they fell to Work all at once every where, knocking the *English* unawares on the Head, some with their Hatchets, which they call *Tommahawks*, others with the Hoes and Axes of the *English* themselves, shooting at those who escap'd the Reach of their Hands; sparing neither Age nor Sex, but destroying Man, Woman and Child, according to their cruel way of leaving none behind to bear Resentment. But whatever was not done by Surprise that Day, was left undone, and many that made early Resistance escaped.

By the Account taken of the *Christians* murder'd that Morning, they were found to be three hundred forty seven, most of them falling by their own Instruments, and Working-Tools.

§. 47. The Massacre had been much more general, had not this Plot been providentially discovered

ver'd to the *English* some Hours before the Execution. It happen'd thus :

Two *Indians* that used to be employ'd by the *English* to hunt for them, happen'd to lie together, the Night before the Massacre, in an *Englishman's* House, where one of them was employ'd. The *Indian* that was the Guest fell to persuading the other to rise and kill his Master, telling him, that he would do the same by his own the next Day. Whereupon he discover'd the whole Plot that was design'd to be executed on the Morrow. But the other, instead of entering into the Plot, and murdering his Master, got up (under pretence of going to execute his Comrade's Advice) went into his Master's Chamber, and reveal'd to him the whole Story that he had been told. The Master hereupon arose, secur'd his own House, and before Day got to *James Town*, which, together with such Plantations as could receive Notice time enough, were sav'd by this Means; the rest, as they happen'd to be watchful in their Defence, also escaped: But such as were surpriz'd, were massacred. Captain *Crosshaw* in his Vessel at *Patorwmeck*, had Notice also given him by a young *Indian*, by which means he came off untouch'd.

§. 48. The Occasion upon which *Oppechanca-nough* took Affront was this. The War Captain mention'd before to have been kill'd, was called *Nemattanow*. He was an active *Indian*, a great Warrior, and in much Esteem among them; so much, that they believ'd him to be invulnerable, and immortal, because he had been in very many Conflicts, and escaped untouch'd from them all. He was also a very cunning Fellow, and took great Pride in preserving and increasing this their Superstition concerning him, affecting every thing that was odd and prodigious to work upon their Admiration.

For

For which Purpose he would often dress himself up with Feathers after a fantastick manner, and by much Use of that Ornament, obtain'd among the *English* the Nickname of *Jack of the Feather*.

This *Nemattanow* coming to a private Settlement of one *Morgan*, who had several Toys which he had a mind to, perswaded him to go to *Pamunky* to dispose of them. He gave him Hopes what mighty Bargains he might meet with there, and kindly offer'd him his Assistance. At last *Morgan* yielded to his Persuasion: But was no more heard of; and it is believ'd, that *Nemattanow* kill'd him by the way, and took away his Treasure. For within a few Days this *Nemattanow* return'd to the same House with *Morgan's* Cap upon his Head; where he found two sturdy Boys, who ask'd for their Master. He very frankly told them, he was dead. But they, knowing the Cap again, suspected the Villain had kill'd their Master, and would have had him before a Justice of Peace: But he refused to go, and very insolently abused them. Whereupon they shot him down, and as they were carrying him to the Governor, he died.

As he was dying, he earnestly press'd the Boys to promise him two things; First, That they would not tell how he was kill'd; and, secondly, That they would bury him among the *English*. So great was the Pride of this vain Heathen, that he had no other Thoughts at his Death, but the Ambition of being esteem'd after he was dead, as he had endeavour'd to make them believe of him while he was alive, *viz.* That he was invulnerable and immortal; tho' his increasing Faintness convinc'd himself of the Falsity of both. He imagined that being buried among the *English*, perhaps might conceal his Death from his own Nation, who might think him translated to some happier Country. Thus he pleas'd himself to the last Gasp

with the Boys Promises to carry on the Delusion. This was reckon'd all the Provocation given to that haughty and revengeful Man *Oppechancanough*, to act this bloody Tragedy, and to take indefatigable Pains to engage in so horrid Villany all the Kings and Nations bordering upon the *English* Settlements, on the western Shore of *Chesapeak*.

§. 49. This gave the *English* a fair Pretence of endeavouring the total Extirpation of the *Indians*, but more especially of *Oppechancanough*, and his Nation. Accordingly, they set themselves about it, making use of the *Roman* Maxim, (*Faith is not to be kept with Hereticks*) to obtain their Ends. For, after some Months fruitless Pursuit of them, who could too dexterously hide themselves in the Woods, the *English* pretended Articles of Peace, giving them all manner of fair Words and Promises of Oblivion. They design'd thereby (as their own Letters now on Record, and their own Actions thereupon, prove) to draw the *Indians* back, and entice them to plant their Corn on their Habitations nearest adjoining to the *English*; and then to cut it up, when the Summer should be too far spent to leave them Hopes of another Crop that Year; by which means they proposed to bring them to want Necessaries and starve. And the *English* did so far accomplish their Ends, as to bring the *Indians* to plant their Corn at their usual Habitations, whereby they gain'd an Opportunity of repaying them some Part of the Debt in their own Coin; for they fell suddenly upon them, cut to Pieces such of them as could not make their Escape, and afterwards totally destroyed their Corn.

§. 50. Another Effect of the Massacre of the *English*, was the reducing all their Settlements again
to

to six or seven in Number, for their better Defence. Besides, it was such a Disheartening to some good Projects, then just advancing, that to this Day they have never been put in Execution, namely, the Glass-Houses in *James-Town*, and the Iron Work at *Falling-Creek*, which has been already mention'd. The Massacre fell so hard upon this last Place, that no Soul was saved, but a Boy and a Girl, who, with great Difficulty, hid themselves.

The Superintendent of this Iron Work had also discover'd a Vein of Lead-Oar, which he kept private, and made use of it to furnish all the Neighbours with Bullets and Shot. But he being cut off with the rest, and the Secret not having been communicated, this Lead-Mine could never after be found; till Colonel *Byrd*, some few Years ago, prevail'd with an *Indian*, under Pretence of Hunting, to give him a Sign, by dropping his *Tomahawk* at the Place, (he not daring publickly to discover it, for fear of being murder'd.) The Sign was accordingly given, and the Company at that time found several Pieces of good Lead-Oar upon the Surface of the Ground, and mark'd the Trees thereabouts: Notwithstanding which, I know not by what Witchcraft it happens, but no Mortal to this Day could ever find that Place again, tho' it be upon part of the Colonel's own Possessions. And so it rests, till Time and thicker Settlements discover it.

§. 51. Thus the Company of Adventurers having, by those frequent Acts of Mismanagement, met with vast Losses and Misfortunes; Many grew sick of it, and parted with their Shares; and others came into their Places, and promoted the sending in fresh Recruits of Men and Goods. But the chief Design of all Parties concern'd was to fetch

away the Treasure from thence, aiming more at sudden Gain, than to form any regular Colony, or establish a Settlement in such a manner, as to make it a lasting Happiness to the Country.

Several Gentlemen went over upon their particular Stocks, separate from that of the Company, with their own Servants and Goods, each designing to obtain Land from the Government, as Captain *Newport* had done; or, at least, to obtain Patents according to the Regulation for granting Lands to Adventurers. Others sought their Grants of the Company in *London*, and obtain'd Authorities and Jurisdictions, as well as Land, distinct from the Authority of the Government, which was the Foundation of great Disorder, and the Occasion of their following Misfortunes. Among others, one Captain *Martin*, having made very considerable Preparations towards a Settlement, obtain'd a suitable Grant of Land, and was made of the Council there. But he grasping still at more, hanker'd after Dominion, as well as Possession, and caused so many Differences, that at last he put all Things into Distraction; insomuch, that the *Indians*, still seeking Revenge, took Advantage of these Dissentions, and fell foul again on the *English*, gratifying their Vengeance with new Bloodshed.

§. 52. The fatal Consequences of the Company's Male-Administration cried so loud, that King *Charles* the First coming to the Crown of *England*, had a tender Concern for the poor People that had been betray'd thither, and lost. Upon which Consideration he dissolv'd the Company in the Year 1626, reducing the Country and Government into his own immediate Direction, appointing the Governor and Council himself, and ordering all Patents and Processes to issue in his own Name;

Name; reserving to himself a Quit-Rent of two Shillings for every hundred Acres of Land, and so *pro rato*.



CHAP. IV.

Containing the History of the Government from the Dissolution of the Company, to the Year 1707.

§3. **T**HE Country being thus taken into the King's Hands, his Majesty was pleased to establish the Constitution to be by a Governor, Council and Assembly, and to confirm the former Methods and Jurisdictions of the several Courts, as they had been appointed in the Year 1620, and placed the last Resort in the Assembly. He likewise confirm'd the Rules and Orders made by the first Assembly for apportioning the Land, and granting Patents to particular Adventurers.

§. 54. This was a Constitution according to their Hearts Desire, and things seem'd now to go on in a happy Course for Encouragement of the Colony. People flock'd over thither apace ; every one took up Land by Patent to his Liking ; and, not minding any thing but to be Masters of great Tracts of Land, they planted themselves separately on their several Plantations. Nor did they fear the *Indians*, but kept them at a greater Distance than formerly : And they for their Parts, seeing the *English* so sensibly increase in Number, were glad to keep their Distance, and be peaceable.

This Liberty of taking up Land, and the Ambition each Man had of being Lord of a vast, tho' unimprov'd Territory, together with the Advantage of the many Rivers, which afford a commodious Road for Shipping at every Man's Door, has made the Country fall into such an unhappy Settlement and Course of Trade; that to this Day they have not any one Place of Cohabitation among them, that may reasonably bear the Name of a Town.

§. 55. The Constitution being thus firmly established, and continuing its course regularly for some time, People began to lay aside all Fears of any future Misfortune. Several Gentlemen of Condition went over with their whole Families; some for bettering their Estates; others for Religion, and other Reasons best known to themselves. Among those, the noble *Cæcilius Calvert*, Lord *Baltimore*, a Roman-Catholick, thought for the more quiet Exercise of his Religion to retire, with his Family, into that new World. For this Purpose he went to *Virginia*, to try how he liked the Place: But the People there look'd upon him with an evil Eye, on Account of his Religion, for which alone he sought this Retreat; and by their ill Treatment discouraged him from settling in that Country.

§. 56. Upon that Provocation, his Lordship resolv'd upon a farther Adventure. And finding Land enough up the Bay of *Chesapeak*, which was likewise bless'd with many brave Rivers, and as yet altogether uninhabited by the *English*; he began to think of making a new Plantation of his own. And for his more certain Direction in obtaining a Grant of it, he undertook a Journey Northward, to discover the Land up the Bay, and observe what might most conveniently square with his Intent.

His

His Lordship finding all things in this Discovery according to his Wish, return'd to *England*. And because the *Virginia* Settlements at that Time reached no farther than the South Side of *Patowmeck* River, his Lordship got a Grant of the Propriety of *Maryland*, bounding it to the South by *Patowmeck* River, on the Western Shore; and by an East Line from Point *Look-out*, on the Eastern Shore: But died himself before he could embark for the promised Land.

Maryland had the Honour to receive its Name from Queen *Mary*, Royal Consort to King *Charles* the First.

§. 57. The old Lord *Baltimore* being thus taken off, and leaving his Designs unfinish'd, his Son and Heir, in the Year 1633, obtain'd a Confirmation of the Patent to himself, and went over in Person to plant his new Colony.

By this unhappy Accident, a Country which Nature had so well contriv'd for one, became two separate Governments. This produced a most unhappy Inconvenience to both; for, these two being the only Countries under the Dominion of *England*, that plant Tobacco in any Quantity, the ill Consequence to both is, that when one Colony goes about to prohibit the Traff or mend the Staple of that Commodity, to help the Market; then the other, to take Advantage of that Market, pours into *England* all they can make, both good and bad, without Distinction. This is very injurious to the other Colony, which had voluntarily suffer'd so great a Diminution in the Quantity to mend the Quality; and this is notoriously manifested from that incomparable *Virginia* Law, appointing sworn Agents to examine their Tobacco.

§. 58. Neither was this all the Mischief that happen'd to *Virginia* upon this Grant; for the Example of it had dreadful Consequences, and was in the End one of the Occasions of another Massacre by the *Indians*. For this Precedent of my Lord *Baltemore's* Grant, which intrench'd upon the Charters and Bounds of *Virginia*, was Hint enough for other Courtiers, (who never intended a Settlement, as my Lord did) to find out something of the same kind to make Money of. This was the Occasion of several very large Defalcations from *Virginia* within a few Years afterwards; which were forwarded and assisted by the Contrivance of the Governor Sir *John Harvey*. Inasmuch, that not only the Land it self, Quit-Rents and all, but the Authorities and Jurisdictions that belonged to that Colony, were given away; nay, sometimes in those Grants he included the very Settlements that had been before made.

§. 59. As this Gentleman was irregular in this, so he was very unjust and arbitrary in his other Methods of Government. He exacted with Rigour the Fines and Penalties, which the unwary Assemblies of those Times had given chiefly to himself, and was so haughty and furious to the Council, and the best Gentlemen of the Country, that his Tyranny grew at last insupportable; so that in the Year 1639, the Council sent him a Prisoner to *London*, and with him two of their Number to maintain the Articles against him. This News being brought to King *Charles* the First, his Majesty was very much displeased; and, without hearing any thing, caused him to return Governor again: But by the next Shipping he was graciously pleased to change him; and so made Amends for this Man's Male-Administration, by sending

sending the good and just Sir *William Berkely* to succeed him.

§. 60. While these things were transacting, there was so general a Dissatisfaction, occasion'd by the Oppressions of Sir *John Harvey*, and the Difficulties in getting him out; that the whole Colony was in Confusion. The subtle *Indians*, who took all Advantages, resent'd the Incroachments upon them by his Grants. They saw the *English* uneasie and disunited among themselves, and by the Direction of *Oppechancanough* their King, laid the Ground-work of another Massacre; wherein by Surprize, they cut off near five hundred Christians more. But this Execution did not take so general Effect as formerly; because the *Indians* were not so frequently suffer'd to come among the inner Habitations of the *English*. And therefore the Massacre fell severest on the South-side of *James River*, and on the Heads of the other Rivers; but chiefly of *York River*, where this *Oppechancanough* kept the Seat of his Government.

§. 61. *Oppechancanough* was a Man of large Stature, noble Presence, and extraordinary Parts. Tho' he had no Advantage of Literature, (that being no where to be found among the *American Indians*) yet he was perfectly skill'd in the Art of governing his rude Country-men. He caus'd all the *Indians* far and near to dread his Name, and had them all entirely in Subjection.

This King in *Smith's History* is call'd Brother to *Powhatan*, but by the *Indians* he was not so esteem'd. For they say he was a Prince of a Foreign Nation, and came to them a great Way from the South-West: And by their Accounts, we suppose him to have come from the *Spanish Indians*, some-where near *Mexico*, or the Mines of *St. Bar-*

be : But, be that Matter how it will, from that Time till his Captivity, there never was the least Truce between them and the *English*.

§. 62. Sir *William Berkely*, upon his Arrival, shew'd such an Opposition to the unjust Grants made by Sir *John Harvey*, that very few of them took Effect; and such as did, were subjected to the settled Conditions of the other Parts of the Government, and made liable to the Payment of the full Quit-Rents. He encouraged the Country in several Essays of Pot-Ash, Soap, Salt, Flax, Hemp, Silk, and Cotton. But the *Indian War* ensuing upon this last Massacre, was a great Obstruction to these good Designs, by requiring all the spare Men to be employ'd in Defence of the Country.

§. 63. *Oppechancanough*, by his great Age, and the Fatigues of War, (in which Sir *William Berkeley* follow'd him close) was now grown so decrepid, that he was not able to walk alone; but was carried about by his Men, where-ever he had a mind to move. His Flesh was all macerated, his Sinews slacken'd, and his Eye-lids became so heavy, that he could not see, but as they were lifted up by his Servants. In this low Condition he was, when Sir *William Berkeley* hearing that he was at some Distance from his usual Habitation, resolved at all Adventures to seize his Person, which he happily effected. For, with a Party of Horse he made a speedy March, surprized him in his Quarters, and brought him Prisoner to *James-Town*; where, by the Governours Command, he was treated with all the Respect and Tenderneſs imaginable. Sir *William* had a mind to send him to *England*, hoping to get Reputation, by presenting his Majesty with a Royal Captive; who at his Pleasure, could
call

call into the Field ten Times more *Indians* than Sir *William Berkeley* had *English* in his whole Government. Besides, he thought this ancient Prince wou'd be an Instance of the Healthiness and long Life of the Natives of that Country. However, he could not preserve his Life above a Fortnight; for one of the Soldiers, resenting the Calamities the Colony had suffer'd by this Prince's Means, basely shot him thro' the Back, after he was made Prisoner.; of which Wound he died.

He continued brave to the last Moment of his Life, and shew'd not the least Dejection at his Captivity. He heard one Day a great noise of the treading of People about him; upon which he caused his Eye-lids to be lifted up; and finding that a Crowd of People were let in to see him, he call'd in high Indignation for the Governor; who being come, *Oppechancanough* scornfully told him, that had it been his Fortune to take Sir *William Berkeley* Prisoner, he should not meanly have exposed him as a Show to the People.

§. 64. After this, Sir *William Berkeley* made a new Peace with the *Indians*, which continued for a long time unviolated; insomuch, that all the Thoughts of future Injury from them were laid aside. But he himself did not long enjoy the Benefit of this profound Peace: For, the unhappy Troubles of King *Charles* the First encreasing in *England*, proved a great Disturbance to him and to all the People. They, to prevent the Infection from reaching that Country, made severe Laws against the *Puritans*, tho' there were as yet none among them. But all Correspondence with *England* was interrupted, the Supplies lessen'd, and Trade obstructed. In a word, all People were impatient, to know, what would be the Event of so much Confusion.

§. 65. At

§. 65. At last the King was traiterously beheaded in *England*, and *Oliver* install'd Protector. However his Authority was not acknowledged in *Virginia* for several Years after, till they were forced to it by the last Necessity. For in the Year 1651, by *Cromwell's* Command, Capt. *Dennis*, with a Squadron of Men of War, arriv'd there from the *Carribbee* Islands, where they had been subduing *Bardoes*. The Country at first held out vigorously against him; and Sir *William Berkeley*, by the Assistance of such *Dutch* Vessels as were then there, made a brave Resistance. But at last *Dennis* contriv'd a Stratagem, which betray'd the Country. He had got a considerable Parcel of Goods aboard, which belong'd to two of the Council; and found a Method of informing them of it. By this means they were reduced to the *Dilemma* either of submitting, or losing their Goods. This occasion'd Factions among them; so that at last, after the Surrender of all the other *English* Plantations, Sir *William* was forced to submit to the Usurper on the Terms of a general Pardon. However, it ought to be remembred, to his praise, and to the immortal Honour of that Colony, that it was the last of all the King's Dominions that submitted to the Usurpation, and afterwards the first that cast it off, and he never took any Post, or Office under the Usurper.

§. 66. *Oliver* had no sooner subdued the Plantations; but he began to contrive how to keep them under, that so they might never be able for the Time to come to give him farther Trouble. To this End, he thought it necessary to break off their Correspondence with all other Nations; thereby to prevent their being furnish'd with Arms, Ammunition, and other Warlike Provisions. According

ing to this Design, he contrived a severe Act of Parliament, whereby he prohibited the Plantations from receiving or exporting any *European* Commodities, but what should be carried to them by *English* Men, and in *English*-built Ships. They were absolutely forbid Corresponding with any Nation or Colony, not subject to the Crown of *England*. Neither was any Alien suffer'd to manage a Trade or Factory in any of them. In all which Things the Plantations had been till then indulged, for their Encouragement.

§. 67. Notwithstanding this Act of Navigation, the Protector never thought the Plantations enough secured; but frequently changed their Governours, to prevent their intriguing with the People. So that during the time of the Usurpation, they had no less than three Governours there, namely, *Diggs*, *Bennet* and *Mathews*.

§. 68. The strange arbitrary Curbs he put upon the Plantations, exceedingly afflicted the People. He had the Inhumanity to forbid them all manner of Trade and Correspondence with other Nations, at a Time when *England* it self was in Distraction; and could neither take off their Commodities, nor supply them sufficiently with its own. Neither had they ever been used to supply them with half the Commodities they expended, or to take off above half the Tobacco they made. Such violent Proceedings made the People desperate, and inspired them with a Desire to use the last Remedy, to relieve themselves from this lawless Usurpation. In a short time afterwards a fair Opportunity happen'd: For Governour *Mathews* died, and no Person was substituted to succeed him in the Government. Whereupon the People apply'd themselves to Sir *William Berkeley*, (who had continued all
this

this time upon his own Plantation in a private Capacity) and unanimously chose him their Governour again.

§. 69. Sir *William Berkeley* had all along retain'd an unshaken Loyalty for the Royal Family ; and therefore generously told the People, that he could not approve of the Protector's Rule; and was resolv'd never to serve any Body, but the lawful Heir to the Crown; and that if he accepted the Government, it should be upon their solemn Promise, after his Example to venture their Lives and Fortunes for the King, who was then in *France*.

This was no great obstacle to them, and therefore with an unanimous Voice they told him, that they were ready to hazard all for the King. Now, this was actually before the King's return for *England*, and proceeded from a brave Principle of Loyalty, for which they had no Example. Sir *William Berkeley* embraced their Choice, and forthwith proclaim'd *Charles* the second King of *England*, *Scotland*, *France*, *Ireland* and *Virginia*, and caused all Proceſs to be issued in his Name. Thus his Majesty was actually King in *Virginia*, before he was so in *England*. But it pleas'd God to restore him soon after to the Throne of his Ancestors; and so that Country escap'd being chastis'd for throwing off the Usurpation.

§. 70. Upon the King's Restoration, he sent Sir *William Berkeley* a new Commission, with leave to return to *England*, and Power to appoint a Deputy in his Absence. For his Majesty in his Exile had received Intelligence of this Gentleman's Loyalty, and during that time had renew'd his Commission.

§. 71. Upon this, Sir *William Berkeley* appointed Colonel *Francis Morrison* Deputy-Governour, and went for *England* to wait on his Majesty, by whom he was kindly receiv'd. At his Return he carried his Majesty's pressing Instructions for encouraging the People in Husbandry and Manufactures ; but more especially to promote Silk and Vineyards. There is a Tradition, that the King, in Compliment to that Colony, wore at his Coronation a Robe made of the Silk, that was sent from thence. But this was all the Reward the Country had for their Loyalty ; for the Parliament was pleas'd to renew the Act contriv'd by the Usurper for discouraging the Plantations, with severer Restraints and Prohibitions by Bonds, Securities, &c.

§. 72. During the time of Sir *William Berkeley*'s Absence, Colonel *Morrison* had, according to his Directions, revised the Laws, and compil'd them into one Body, ready to be confirm'd by the Assembly at his Return. By these Laws, the Church of *England* was confirm'd the establish'd Religion, the Charge of the Government sustain'd, Trade and Manufactures were encouraged, a Town projected, and all the *Indian* Affairs settled.

§. 73. The Parishes were likewise regulated, competent Allowances were made to the Ministers to the value of about Fourscore Pounds a Year, besides Glebes and Perquisites, and the Method of their Preferment was settled. Convenient Churches and Glebes were provided, and all necessary Parish-Officers instituted. Some steps were made also towards a Free-School, and College, and the Poor were effectually provided for.

§. 74. For

§. 74. For support of the Government the Duty of two Shillings *per* Hoghead on all Tobacco's, and that of one Shilling *per* Tun Port-Duty on Shipping, were made perpetual; and the Collectors were obliged to account for the same to the General Assembly.

§. 75. For Encouragement of Manufactures, Prizes were appointed for the Makers of the best Pieces of Linen Cloth, and a Reward of fifty Pounds of Tobacco was given for each Pound of Silk. All Persons were enjoin'd to plant Mulberry-Trees, for the Food of the Silk-Worm, according to the Number of Acres of Land they held. Tan-houses were set up in each County, at the County Charge; and public Encouragement was given to a Salt-work on the Eastern Shore. A Reward was appointed in Proportion to the Tonnage of all Sea-Vessels built there, and an Exemption allow'd from all Fees and Duties payable by such Shipping.

§. 76. The King had commanded, that all Ships trading to *Virginia*, should go to *James-Town*, and there enter before they broke Bulk: But the Assembly, from the Impracticableness of that Command, excused all, except the *James-River* Ships, from that Order, and left the others in the Rivers they were bound to, to ride dispers'd, as the Commanders pleased; by whose Example the *James-River* Ships were no sooner enter'd with the Officer at *James-Town*, but they also dispers'd themselves to unload, and trade all over the River. By this means the design of Towns was totally baulk'd, and this Order prov'd only an Ease to the Officer of *James-River*, and a means of creating a good Place to him.

§. 77. Peace and Commerce with the *Indians* was settled by Law, and their Boundaries prescribed. Several other Acts were made suiting the Necessity of the Government; so that nothing then seem'd to remain, but the Improvement of the Country, and Encouragement of those Manufactures the King had been pleased to recommend, together with such others as should be found beneficial.

§. 78. Sir *William Berkeley* at his return gave Sanction to this Body of Laws, and being then again in full Possession of his Government, and at perfect Peace with the *Indians*, set all Hands industriously to work in making Country Improvements. He pass'd a new Act for Encouragement of *James Town*, whereby several Houses were built therein, at the Charge of several Counties. However, the main Ingredient for the Advancement of Towns was still wanting, namely, the Confinement of all Shipping and Trade to them only; by Defect of which all the other Expedients avail'd nothing; for most of the Buildings were soon converted into Houses of Entertainment.

§. 79. *Anno 1663*, diverse Sectaries in Religion beginning to spread themselves there, great Restraints were laid upon them under severe Penalties, to prevent their Encrease.

This made many of them fly to other Colonies, and prevented abundance of others from going over to seat themselves among 'em. And as the former ill Treatment of my Lord *Baltimore* kept many People away, and drove others to *Maryland*; so the present Severities towards the Non-conformists kept off many more, who went to the neighbouring Colonies.

§. 80. The rigorous Circumscription of their Trade, the Persecution of the Sectaries, and the little Demand of Tobacco, had like to have had very fatal Consequences. For, the poor People becoming thereby very uneasie, their Murmurs were watch'd and fed, by several mutinous and rebellious *Oliverian* Soldiers, that were sent thither as Servants. These depending upon the discontented People of all Sorts, form'd a villainous Plot to destroy their Masters, and afterwards to set up for themselves.

This Plot was brought so near to Perfection, that it was the very Night before the design'd Execution, e'er it was discover'd; and then it came out by the relenting of one of their Accomplices, whose Name was *Birkenhead*. This Man was Servant to Mr. *Smith* of *Purton*, in *Gloucester* County, near which Place, viz. at *Poplar-Spring*, the Miscreants were to meet the Night following, and put in Execution their horrid Conspiracy.

§. 81. Upon this Discovery by *Birkenhead*, notice was immediately sent to the Governor at *Green-Spring*. And the Method he took to prevent it was by private Orders, that some of the Militia should meet before the Time, at the Place where the Conspirators were to rendezvous, and seize them as they came singly up to it. Which Orders being happily executed, their devilish Plot was defeated. However, there were but a few taken; because several of them making their Escape, turn'd back such of their Fellows as they met on the Road, and prevented most of them from coming up, or from being discover'd.

Four of these Rogues were hang'd: But *Birkenhead* was gratified with his Freedom, and a Reward of two hundred Pounds Sterling.

*

§. 82. For

§. 82. For the Discovery and happy Disappointment of this Plot, an anniversary Thanksgiving was appointed on the 13th of *September*, the Day it was to have been put in Execution. And it is great pity some other Days are not commemorated, as well as that.

§. 83. The News of this Plot being transmitted to King *Charles* the Second, his Majesty sent his Royal Commands to build a Fort at *James Town*, for Security of the Governor, and to be a Curb upon all such traitorous Attempts for the future. But the Country, thinking the Danger over, only raised a Battery of some small Pieces of Cannon.

§. 84. Another Misfortune happen'd to the Plantation this Year, which was a new Act of Parliament in *England*, laying a severer Restraint upon their Supplies than formerly. By this Act they could have no Foreign Goods, which were not first landed in *England*, and carried directly from thence to the Plantations; the former Restraint of importing them only by *English* Men, in *English* built Shipping, not being thought sufficient.

This was a Misfortune that cut with a double Edge; For, First, it reduced their Staple Tobacco to a very low Price; and, Secondly, it raised the Value of *European* Goods, to what the Merchants pleased to put upon them.

§. 85. For this their Assembly could think of no Remedy, but to be even with the Merchants, and make their Tobacco scarce, by prohibiting the Planting of it for one Year; and during that idle Year to invite the People to enter upon Manufacturing Flax and Hemp. But *Maryland* not con-

curing in this Project, they were obliged in their own Defence to repeal the Act of Assembly again, and return to their old Drudgery of planting Tobacco without profiting by it.

§. 86. The Country thus mis'd of their Remedy in the Stint of Tobacco; which on the contrary multiplied exceedingly by the great Increase of Servants. This, together with the above-mention'd Curbs on Trade, exasperated the People, because now they found themselves under a Necessity of exchanging their Commodities with the Merchants of *England* at their own Terms. The Assembly therefore again attempted the Stint of Tobacco, and pass'd another Act against planting it for one Year: And *Carolina* and *Maryland* both agreed to it. But some Accident hindring the Agent of *Carolina* from giving Notice thereof to *Maryland* by the Day appointed, the Governor of that Province proclaim'd the Act void. Altho' every Body there knew, that *Carolina* had fully agreed to all Things required of them. But he took Advantage of this nice Punctilio; because of the Loss such a Diminution would have been to his annual Income; and so all People relaps'd again into the Disease of planting Tobacco.

Virginia was more nettled at this ill Usage from *Maryland*, than at her former absolute Denial. But were forc'd to take all patiently, and by fair Means get Relief, if they could. They therefore appointed Agents to reassume the Treaty, and submitted so low, as to send them to St. *Mary's*, then the Residence of the Governor of *Maryland*, and the Place where the Assemblies met. Yet all this Condescension could not hold them to their Bargain. The Governor said, He had observ'd his Part of the Agreement, and would not call an Assembly any more upon that Subject.

§. 87. In

§. 87. In this manner two whole Years were spent, and nothing could be accomplish'd for their Relief. In the mean while, *England* was studious to prevent their receiving Supplies from any other Country. To do that more effectually, it was thought expedient to confine the Trade of that Colony to one Place. But that not being found practicable, because of the many great Rivers that divide their Habitations, and the extraordinary Conveniencies of each; his Majesty sent Directions to build Forts in the several Rivers, and enjoin'd all the Ships to ride under those Forts; and farther order'd, that those Places only should be the Ports of Trade.

§. 88. This Instruction was punctually observed for a Year, and Preparations were made for Ports, by casting up Breast-works, in such Places as the Assembly appointed; and the Shipping did for that time ride at those Places. But the great Fire and Plague happening in *London* immediately upon it, made their Supplies that Year very uncertain; and the Terror the People were in, lest the Plague should be brought over with the Ships from *London*, prevented them from residing at those Ports, for fear of being all swept away at once. And so every Body was left at Liberty again.

§. 89. Still no Favour could be obtain'd for the Tobacco Trade; and the *English* Merchants afforded but a bare Support of Cloathing for their Crops. The Assembly were full enough of Resentment, but overlook'd their right Way of Redress. All they cou'd do was to cause Looms and Work-Houses to be set up in the several Counties at the County Charge. They renew'd the Rewards of Silk, and put great Penalties upon every Neg-

lect of making Flax and Hemp. About this Time they sustain'd some Damage by the *Dutch War*; for which Reason they ordered the Forts to be rebuilt of Brick: But having yet no true Notion of the Advantage of Towns, they did not oblige the Ships to ride under them. Which Thing alone well executed, would have answer'd all their Desires.

§. 90. Sir *William Berkeley*, who was always contriving and industrious for the Good of the Country, was not contented to set a useful Example at home, by the Essays he made of Pot-Ash, Flax, Hemp, Silk, &c. but was also resolv'd to make new Discoveries abroad amongst the *Indians*.

For this End he employ'd a small Company of about fourteen *English*, and as many *Indians*, under the Command of Captain *Henry Batt*, to go upon such an Adventure. They set out together from *Appamattox*, and in seven Days March reach'd the Foot of the Mountains. The Mountains they first arriv'd at, were not extraordinary high or steep; but, after they had pass'd the first Ridge, they encounter'd others, that seem'd to reach the Clouds, and were so perpendicular and full of Precipices, that sometimes in a whole Day's March, they could not travel three Miles in a direct Line. In other Places they found large level Plains, and fine *Savanna's*, three or four Miles wide, in which were an infinite Quantity of Turkeys, Deer, Elks and Buffaloes, so gentle and undisturbed, that they had no Fear at the Appearance of the Men: But would suffer them to come almost within Reach of their Hands. There they also found Grapes so prodigiously large, that they seem'd more like Bullace than Grapes. When they travers'd these Mountains, they came to a fine level Country again, and discover'd a Rivulet that descended backwards. Down that Stream they travell'd several Days, till they

they came to old Fields and Cabbins, where the *Indians* had lately been; but were supposed to have fled at the Approach of *Batt* and his Company. However, the Captain follow'd the old Rule of leaving some Toys in their Cabbins, for them to find at their Return, by which they might know they were Friends. Near to these Cabbins were great Marshes; where the *Indians* which Capt. *Batt* had with him, made a Halt, and would positively proceed no farther. They said, that not far from that Place, lived a Nation of *Indians*, that sold Salt, and sold it to their Neighbours. That there was a great and powerful People, which never suffer'd any Strangers to return, that had once discover'd their Towns. Capt. *Batt* used all the Arguments he could to get them forward, but in vain. And so, to please those timorous *Indians*, the Hopes of this Discovery were frustrated, and the Detachment was forced to return. In this Journey it is suppos'd that *Batt* never cross'd the great Ridge of Mountains, but kept up under it to the Southward. For of late Years the *Indian* Traders have discover'd, on this side the Mountains, about five hundred Miles to the Southward, a River they call *Oukfuskie*, full of broad sunken Grounds and Marshes, but falling into the Bay or great Gulf between Cape *Florida* and the Mouth of the *Mississippi*, which I suppose to be the River where *Batt* saw the *Indian* Cabbins and Marshes, but is gone to from *Virginia* without ever piercing the high Mountains, and only incountring the Point of an Elbow, which they make a little to the Southward of *Virginia*.

§. 91. Upon Capt. *Batt*'s Report to Sir *William Berkeley*, he resolv'd to make a Journey himself; that so there might be no Hindrance for Want of sufficient Authority, as had been in the aforesaid

Expedition. To this End he concerted Matters for it, and had pitch'd upon his Deputy-Governor. The Assembly also made an Act to encourage it. But all these Preparations came to nothing, by the Confusion which happen'd there soon after by *Bacon's* Rebellion. And since that, there has never been any such Discovery attempted from *Virginia*, when Governor *Spotswood* found a Passage over the great Ridge of Mountains, and went over them himself.

§. 92. The Occasion of this Rebellion is not easie to be discover'd: But 'tis certain there were many Things that concurr'd towards it. For it cannot be imagined, that upon the Instigation of two or three Traders only, who aim'd at a Monopoly of the *Indian* Trade, as some pretend to say, the whole Country would have fallen into so much Distracti-on; in which People did not only hazard their Necks by Rebellion, but endeavour'd to ruin a Governor, whom they all entirely loved, and had unanimously chosen; a Gentleman who had devoted his whole Life and Estate to the Service of the Country, and against whom in thirty five Years Experience, there had never been one single Complaint. Neither can it be supposed, that upon so slight Grounds, they would make Choice of a Leader they hardly knew, to oppose a Gentleman, that had been so long, and so deservedly the Darling of the People. So that in all Probability there was something else in the Wind, without which the Body of the Country had never been engaged in that Insurrection.

Four Things may be reckon'd to have been the main Ingredients towards this intestine Commotion, viz. First, The extream low Price of Tobacco, and the ill Usage of the Planters in the Exchange of Goods for it, which the Country, with all their earnest Endeavours, could not remedy. Secondly,

ly, The splitting the Colony into Proprieties, contrary to the original Charters; and the extravagant Taxes they were forced to undergo, to relieve themselves from those Grants. Thirdly, The heavy Restraints and Burdens laid upon their Trade by Act of Parliament in *England*. Fourthly, The Disturbance given by the *Indians*. Of all which in their Order.

§. 93. First, Of the low Price of Tobacco, and the Disappointment of all Sort of Remedy, I have spoken sufficiently before. Secondly, Of splitting the Country into Proprieties.

King *Charles* the Second, to gratifie some Nobles about him, made two great Grants out of that Country. These Grants were not of the uncultivated Wood-Land only, but also of Plantations, which for many Years had been seated and improv'd, under the Encouragement of several Charters granted by his Royal Ancestors to that Colony. Those Grants were distinguished by the Names of the Northern and Southern Grants of *Virginia*, and the same Men were concern'd in both. They were kept dormant some Years after they were made, and in the Year 1674 begun to be put in Execution. As soon as ever the Country came to know this, they remonstrated against them; and the Assembly drew up an humble Address to his Majesty, complaining of the said Grants, as derogatory to the previous Charters and Privileges granted to that Colony, by his Majesty and his Royal Progenitors. They sent to *England* Mr. Secretary *Ludwell* and Colonel *Park*, as their Agents to address the King to vacate those Grants. And the better to defray that Charge, they laid a Tax of fifty Pounds of Tobacco *per Poll*, for two Years together, over and above all other Taxes, which was an excessive Burden. They likewise laid Amercements of seventy,
fifty,

fifty, or thirty Pounds of Tobacco, as the Cause was on every Law-case tried throughout the Country. Besides all this, they applied the Balance, remaining due upon Account of the two Shilling *per* Hogshead, and Fort-Duties, to this Use. Which Taxes and Amercements fell heaviest on the poor People, the Effect of whose Labour wou'd not cloath their Wives and Children. This made them desperately uneasie, especially when, after a whole Year's Patience under all these Pressures, they had no Encouragement from their Agents in *England*, to hope for Remedy; nor any Certainty when they should be eased of those heavy Impositions.

§. 94. Thirdly, Upon the Back of all these Misfortunes came out the Act of 25 *Car.* II. for better securing the Plantation Trade. By this Act several Duties were laid on the Trade from one Plantation to another. This was a new Hardship, and the rather, because the Revenue arising by this Act, was not applied to the Use of the Plantation wherein it was raised: But given clear away; nay, in that Country it seem'd to be of no other Use, but to burden the Trade, or create a good Income to the Officers; for the Collector had Half, the Comptroller a Quarter, and the remaining Quarter was subdivided into Salaries, till it was lost.

By the same Act also very great Duties were laid on the Fisheries of the Plantations, if manufactured by the *English* Inhabitants there; while the People of *England* were absolutely free from all Customs. Nay, tho' the Oil, Blubber, and Whale-Bone, which were made by the Inhabitants of the Plantations, were carried to *England* by *English* Men, and in *English* built Ships, yet it was held to a considerable Duty, more than the Inhabitants of *England* paid.

§. 95. These were the Afflictions that Country labour'd under, when the fourth Accident happen'd, *viz.* The Disturbance offer'd by the *Indians* to the Frontiers.

This was occasion'd, First, By the *Indians* on the Head of the Bay. Secondly, By the *Indians* on their own Frontiers.

First, The *Indians* at the Head of the Bay drove a constant Trade with the *Dutch* in *Monadas*, now call'd *New-York*; and to carry on this, they us'd to come every Year by the Frontiers of *Virginia*, to hunt and purchase Skins and Furs of the *Indians* to the Southward. This Trade was carried on peaceably while the *Dutch* held *Monadas*; and the *Indians* us'd to call on the *English* in *Virginia* on their Return, to whom they would sell Part of their Furs, and with the rest go on to *Monadas*. But after the *English* came to possess that Place, and understood the Advantages the *Virginians* made by the Trade of their *Indians*, they inspir'd them with such a Hatred to the Inhabitants of *Virginia*, that, instead of coming peaceably to trade with them, as they had done for several Years before, they afterwards never came, but only to commit Robberies and Murders upon the People.

Secondly, The *Indians* upon their own Frontiers were likewise inspir'd with ill Thoughts of 'em. For their *Indian* Merchants had lost a considerable Branch of their Trade they knew not how; and apprehended the Consequences of Sir *William Berkeley's* intended Discoveries, (espoused by the Assembly) might take away the remaining Part of their Profit. This made them very troublesome to the Neighbour *Indians*; who on their Part, observing an unusual Uneasiness in the *English*, and being terrified by their rough Usage, immediately suspected
some

some wicked Design against their Lives, and fled to their remoter Habitations. This confirm'd the *English* in the Belief, that they had been the Murderers, till at last they provoked them to be so in earnest.

§. 96. This Addition of Mischief to Minds already full of Discontent, made People ready to vent all their Resentment against the poor *Indians*. There was nothing to be got by Tobacco; neither could they turn any other Manufacture to Advantage; so that most of the poorer Sort were willing to quit their unprofitable Employments, and go Voluntiers against the *Indians*.

At first they flock'd together tumultuously, running in Troops from one Plantation to another without a Head; till at last the seditious Humour of Colonel *Nath. Bacon* led him to be of the Party. This Gentleman had been brought up at one of the Inns of Court in *England*, and had a moderate Fortune. He was young, bold, active, of an inviting Aspect, and powerful Elocution. In a Word, he was every way qualified to head a giddy and unthinking Multitude. Before he had been three Years in the Country, he was, for his extraordinary Qualifications, made one of the Council, and in great Honour and Esteem among the People. For this reason he no sooner gave Countenance to this riotous Mob, but they all presently fix'd their Eyes upon him for their General, and accordingly made their Addresses to him. As soon as he found this, he harangued them publicly. He aggravated the *Indian* Mischiefs, complaining, that they were occasion'd for Want of a due Regulation of their Trade. He recounted particularly the other Grievances and Pressures they lay under, and pretended, that he accepted of their Command with no other Intention, but to do them and the Country

Country Service, in which he was willing to encounter the greatest Difficulties and Dangers. He farther assured them, he would never lay down his Arms, till he had revenged their Sufferings upon the *Indians*, and redress'd all their other Grievances.

§. 97. By these Insinuations he wrought his Men into so perfect an Unanimity, that they were one and all at his Devotion. He took Care to exasperate them to the utmost, by representing all their Misfortunes. After he had begun to muster them, he dispatch'd a Messenger to the Governor, by whom he aggravated the Mischiefs done by the *Indians*, and desired a Commission of General to go out against them. This Gentleman was in so great Esteem at that time with the Council, that the Governor did not think fit to give him a flat Refusal: But sent him Word, he would consult the Council, and return him a farther Answer.

§. 98. In the mean time, *Bacon* was expeditious in his Preparations, and having all things in Readiness, began his March depending on the Authority the People had given him. He would not lose so much Time, as to stay for his Commission; but dispatch'd several Messengers to the Governor to hasten it. On the other hand, the Governor, instead of a Commission, sent positive Orders to him to disperse his Men and come down in Person to him, upon Pain of being declared a Rebel.

§. 99. This unexpected Order was a great Surprise to *Bacon*, and not a little Trouble to his Men. However, he was resolved to prosecute his first Intentions, depending upon his Strength, and Interest with the People. Nevertheless, he intended to wait upon the Governor, but not altogether

gether defenceless. Pursuant to this Resolution, he took about forty of his Men down with him in a Sloop to *James Town*, where the Governor was with his Council.

§. 100. Matters did not succeed there to Mr. *Bacon's* Satisfaction ; wherefore he express'd himself a little too freely. For which being suspended from the Council, he went away again in a Huff with his Sloop and Followers. The Governor fill'd a long Boat with Men, and pursued the Sloop so close, that Colonel *Bacon* removed into his Boat to make more Haste. But the Governor had sent up by Land to the Ships at *Sandy-Point*, where he was stopp'd, and sent down again. Upon his Return he was kindly received by the Governor, who, knowing he had gone a Step beyond his Instructions in having suspended him, was glad to admit him again of the Council ; after which he hoped all things might be pacified.

§. 101. Notwithstanding this, Col. *Bacon* still insisted upon a Commission to be General of the Volunteers, and to go out against the *Indians* ; from which the Governor endeavour'd to dissuade him, but to no Purpose, because he had some secret Project in View. He had the Luck to be countenanced in his Importunities, by the News of fresh Murder and Robberies committed by the *Indians*. However, not being able to accomplish his Ends by fair Means, he stole privately out of Town ; and having put himself at the Head of six hundred Volunteers, marched directly to *James Town*, where the Assembly was then sitting. He presented himself before the Assembly, and drew up his Men in Battalia before the House wherein they sat. He urged to them his Preparations ; and alledged, that if the Commission had not been delay'd so long,

long, the War against the *Indians* might have been finish'd.

§. 102. The Governor resented this insolent Usage worst of all, and now obstinately refused to grant him any thing, offering his naked Breast against the presented Arms of his Followers. But the Assembly, fearing the fatal Consequence of provoking a discontented Multitude ready arm'd, who had the Governor, Council and Assembly entirely in their Power, address'd the Governor to grant *Bacon* his Request. They prepar'd themselves the Commission, constituting him General of the Forces of *Virginia*, and brought it to the Governor to be sign'd.

With much Reluctancy the Governor sign'd it, and thereby put the Power of War and Peace into *Bacon's* Hands. Upon this he march'd away immediately, having gain'd his End, which was in effect a Power to secure a Monopoly of the *Indian* Trade to himself and his Friends.

§. 103. As soon as General *Bacon* had march'd to such a convenient Distance from *James Town*, that the Assembly thought they might deliberate with Safety, the Governor, by their Advice, issued a Proclamation of Rebellion against him, commanding his Followers to surrender him, and forthwith disperse themselves; giving Orders at the same time, for raising the Militia of the Country against him.

§. 104. The People being much exasperated, and General *Bacon* by his Address and Eloquence having gain'd an absolute Dominion over their Hearts, they unanimously resolv'd, that not a Hair of his Head should be touch'd, much less that they should surrender him as a Rebel. Therefore they kept to their Arms, and instead of proceeding against

gainst the *Indians*, they march'd back to *James Town* ; directing their Fury against such of their Friends and Countrymen, as should dare to oppose them.

§. 105. The Governor seeing this, fled over the Bay to *Accomack*, whither he hoped the Infection of *Bacon's* Conspiracy had not reach'd. But there, instead of that People's receiving him with open Arms, in Remembrance of the former Services he had done them ; they began to make Terms with him for Redress of their Grievances, and for the Ease and Liberty of Trade against the Acts of Parliament. Thus Sir *William*, who had been almost the Idol of the People, was, by reason of their Calamity and Jealousy, abandon'd by all, except some few, who went over to him from the Western Shore in Sloops and Boats ; among which one Major *Robert Beverly* was the most active and successful Commander : So that it was some time before he could make head against *Bacon* ; but left him to range thro' the Country at Discretion.

§. 106. General *Bacon* at first held a Convention of such of the chief Gentlemen of the Country, as would come to him, especially of those about *Middle-Plantation*, who were near at Hand. At this Convention they made a Declaration to justify his unlawful Proceedings ; and obliged People to take an Oath of Obedience to him as their General. Then, by their Advice, on Pretence of the Governor's Abdication, he call'd an Assembly, by Writs sign'd by himself, and four others of the Council.

The Oath was Word for Word as follows.

Whereas

W Hereas the Country hath raised an Army against our common Enemy the Indians, and the same under the Command of General Bacon, being upon the Point to march forth against the said common Enemy, hath been diverted, and necessitated to move to the suppressing of Forces, by evil disposed Persons raised against the said General Bacon, purposely to foment and stir up Civil War among us, to the Ruine of this his Majesty's Country. And, Whereas it is notoriously manifest, that Sir William Berkeley, Knight, Governor of the Country, assisted, counselled and abetted by those evil disposed Persons aforesaid, hath not only commanded, fomented and stirr'd up the People to the said Civil War; but failing therein, hath withdrawn himself, to the great Astonishment of the People, and the Unsettlement of the Country. And, Whereas the said Army, raised by the Country for the Causes aforesaid, remain full of Dissatisfaction in the Middle of the Country, expecting Attempts from the said Governor and the evil Counsellors aforesaid. And since no proper Means have been found out for the Settlement of the Distractions, and preventing the horrid Outrages and Murders daily committed in many Places of the Country by the barbarous Enemy; It hath been thought fit by the said General, to call unto him all such sober and discreet Gentlemen, as the present Circumstances of the Country will admit, to the Middle-Plantation, to consult and advise of re-establishing the Peace of the Country. So we the said Gentlemen, being this 3^d of August, 1676, accordingly met, do advise, resolve, declare and conclude, and for our selves do swear in manner following.

First, That we will at all Times join with the said General Bacon and his Army, against the common Enemy in all Points whatsoever.

F

Secondly,

Secondly, *That whereas certain Persons have lately contrived and design'd the raising Forces against the said General, and the Army under his Command, thereby to beget a Civil War; We will endeavour the Discovery and Apprehending of all and every of those evil disposed Persons, and them secure, until farther Order from the General.*

Thirdly, *And whereas it is credibly reported, that the Governor hath inform'd the King's Majesty, that the said General, and the People of the Country in Arms under his Command, their Aiders and Abettors, are rebellious, and remov'd from their Allegiance; and that upon such like Information, he the said Governor hath advised and petition'd the King to send Forces to reduce them; We do farther declare and believe in our Consciences, That it consists with the Welfare of this Country, and with our Allegiance to his most Sacred Majesty, that we the Inhabitants of Virginia, to the utmost of our Power, do oppose and suppress all Forces whatsoever of that Nature, until such time as the King be fully inform'd of the State of the Case, by such Person or Persons, as shall be sent from the said Nathaniel Bacon, in the Behalf of the People; and the Determination thereof be remitted hither. And we do swear, That we will him the said General, and the Army under his Command, aid and assist accordingly.*

§. 108. By this Time the Governor had got together a small Party to side with him. These he furnished with Sloops, Arms and Ammunition, under Command of Major Robert Beverley, in order to cross the Bay, and oppose the Malecontents. By this means there happen'd some Skirmishes, in which several were kill'd, and others taken Prisoners. Thus they were going on by a Civil War to destroy one another, and lay waste their Infant Country; when it pleas'd God, after some Months

Con-

Confusion, to put an End to their Misfortunes, as well as to *Bacon's* Designs, by his natural Death.

He died at Dr. *Green's* in *Gloucester* County: But where he was buried was never yet discover'd; tho' afterward there was great Enquiry made, with Design to expose his Bones to public Infamy.

§. 109. In the mean while, those Disorders occasion'd a general Neglect of Husbandry, and a great Destruction of the Stocks of Cattle; so that People had a dreadful Prospect of Want and Famine. But the Malecontents being thus disunited by the Loss of their General, in whom they all confided, they began to squabble among themselves; and every Man's Business was how to make the best Terms he could for himself.

Lieutenant-General *Ingram* (whose true Name was *Johnson*) and Major-General *Walklate* surrender'd on Condition of Pardon for themselves and their Followers; tho' they were both forced to submit to an Incapacity of bearing Office in that Country for the future.

Peace being thus restored, Sir *William Berkeley* return'd to his former Seat of Government, and every Man to his several Habitation.

§. 110. While this intestine War was fomenting there, the Agents of the Country in *England* could not succeed in their Remonstrance against the Propriety-Grants; tho' they were told, that those Grants should be revok'd. But the News of their Civil War reaching *England* about the same time, the King would then proceed no farther in that Matter. So the Agents thought it their best way to compound with the Proprietors. Accordingly they agreed with them for four hundred Pounds a Man, which was paid; and so all the Clamour

against those Grants ended, neither was any more heard of them there till above a dozen Years afterwards.

§. 111. But all those Agents could obtain after their Composition with the Lords, was merely the Name of a new Charter, granting only so much of their former Constitution as mention'd a Residence of the Governor or Deputy, a granting of Escheat Lands for two Pounds of Tobacco *per Acre* Composition; and that the Lands should be held of the Crown in the same Tenure as East *Greenwich*, that is, free and common Soccage, and have their immediate Dependance on the Crown.

§. 112. When this Storm, occasion'd by *Bacon*, was blown over, and all things quiet again, Sir *William Berkeley* called an Assembly for settling the Affairs of the Country, and for making Reparation to such as had been oppress'd. After which a Regiment of Soldiers arriv'd from *England*, which were sent to suppress the Insurrection: But they coming after the Business was over, had no Occasion to exercise their Courage. However, they were kept on Foot there about three Years after, and in the Lord *Colepepper's* Time paid off, and disbanded.

§. 113. The Confusion occasion'd by the Civil War, and the Advantage the *Indians* made of it in butchering the *English* upon all their Frontiers, caused such a Desolation, and put the Country so far back, that to the Year 1704, they had seated very little beyond the Boundaries that were then inhabited. At that Time *James Town* was again burnt down to the Ground by *Richard Laurence*, one of *Bacon's* Captains, who, when his own Men, that abhorr'd such Barbarity, refused to obey his Command, he himself became the Executioner, and fired the Houses with his own Hands.

This

This unhappy Town did never after arrive to the Perfection it then had: And now it is almost deserted by removing in Governor *Nicholson's* Time the Assembly and General Court from thence to *Williamsburgh*, an inland Place about seven Miles from it.

§. 114. With the Regiment above-mention'd arrived Commissioners, to enquire into the Occasion and Authors of this Rebellion; and Sir *William Berkeley* came to *England*: Where from the Time of his Arrival, his Sickneſs obliged him to keep his Chamber, till he died; ſo that he had no Opportunity of kiſſing the King's Hand. But his Maſteſty declared himſelf well ſatisfied with his Conduct in *Virginia*, and was very kind to him during his Sickneſs; often enquiring after his Health, and commanding him not to hazard it by too early an Endeavour to come to Court.

§. 115. Upon Sir *William Berkeley's* Voyage to *England*, *Herbert Jeffreys*, Eſq; was appointed Governor. He made formal Articles of Peace with the *Indians*, and held an Aſſembly at *Middle-Plantation*, wherein they ſettled and allow'd a free Trade with the *Indians*; but reſtrain'd it to certain Marts, to which the *Indians* ſhould bring their Commodities: And this alſo to be under ſuch certain Rules as were by that Aſſembly directed. But this Method was not agreeable to the *Indians*, who had never before been under any Regulation. They thought, that if all former Uſages were not reſtored, the Peace was not perfect; and therefore did not much rely upon it, which made thoſe new Reſtrictions uſeleſs.

Governor *Jeffreys* his Time was very ſhort there, he being taken off by Death the Year following.

§. 116. After him Sir *Henry Chicheley* was made Deputy-Governor, in the latter End of the Year 1678. In his Time the Assembly, for the greater Terror of the *Indians*, built Magazines at the Heads of the four great Rivers, and furnished them with Arms, Ammunition, and Men in constant Service.

This Assembly also prohibited the Importation of Tobacco, which *Carolina*, and sometimes *Maryland*, were wont to send thither, in order to its being shipp'd off for *England*. But in that, I think, *Virginia* mistook her Interest. For, had they permitted this Custom to become habitual, and thus engross'd the Shipping, as would soon have happen'd, they could easily have regulated the Trade of Tobacco at any Time, without the Concurrence of those other Colonies, and without submitting to their perverse Humours, as formerly.

§. 117. The Spring following, *Thomas Lord Colepepper* arrived there Governor, and carry'd with him some Laws, which had been drawn up in *England*, to be enacted in their Assembly. And coming with the Advantage of restoring Peace to a troubled Nation, it was not difficult for him to obtain whatever he pleas'd from the People. His Influence too was the greater, by the Power he had of pardoning those who had a Hand in the Disorders committed in the late Rebellion.

§. 118. In his first Assembly he pass'd several Acts very obliging to the Country, *viz.* First, An Act of Naturalization, whereby the Power of Naturalizing Foreigners was placed in the Governor. Secondly, An Act for Cohabitation, and Encouragement of Trade and Manufactures; whereby a certain Place in each County was appointed for a Town, in which all Goods imported, and ex-
ported

ported were to be landed and shipp'd off, bought and sold. Which Act was kindly brought to nothing by the Opposition of the Tobacco-Merchants of *England*. Thirdly, An Act of general Pardon and Oblivion, whereby all the Transgressions and Outrages committed in the Time of the late Rebellion, were entirely remitted; and Reparation allow'd to People that should be evil spoken of on that Account.

§. 119. By passing some Laws that obliged the Country, the Lord *Colepepper* carried one that was very pleasing to himself, *viz.* The Act for raising a public Revenue for the better Support of the Government. By this he got the Duties contain'd therein to be made perpetual; and that the Money, which before used to be accounted for to the Assembly, should be from thenceforth disposed of by his Majesty's sole Direction, for the Support of the Government. When this was done, he obtain'd of the King out of the said Duties a Salary of two thousand Pounds *per Annum*, instead of one thousand, which was formerly allow'd. Also one hundred and sixty Pounds *per Annum* for House-rent, besides all the usual Perquisites.

§. 120. In those submissive Times his Lordship reduced the greatest Perquisite of his Place to a Certainty, which before that was only gratuitous; that is, instead of the Masters of Ships making Presents of Liquors or Provisions towards the Governor's House-keeping, as they were wont to do, he demanded a certain Sum of Money, remitting that Custom. This Rate has ever since been demanded of all Commanders as a Duty; and is twenty Shillings for each Ship or Vessel, under an hundred Tuns, and thirty Shillings for each Ship upwards

upwards of that Burden, to be paid every Voyage, or Port-clearing.

§. 121. This noble Lord seem'd to lament the unhappy State of the Country, in relation to their Coin. He was tenderly concern'd that all their Cash should be drain'd away by the neighbouring Colonies, which had not set so low an Estimate upon it as *Virginia*; and therefore he propos'd the raising of it.

This was what the Country had formerly desired, and the Assembly was about making a Law for it: But his Lordship stopt them, alledging it was the King's Prerogative, by Virtue of which he would do it by Proclamation. This they did not approve of, well knowing, if that were the Case, his Lordship and every other Governor would at any time have the same Prerogative of altering it, and so People should never be at any Certainty; as they quickly after found from his own Practice. For his Drift was only to make Advantage of paying the Soldiers; Money for that purpose being put into his Lordship's Hands, he provided light Pieces of Eight, which he with this View had bought at a cheap Rate. When this Contrivance was ripe for Execution, he extended the Royal Prerogative, and issued forth a Proclamation, for raising the Value of Pieces of Eight from five to six Shillings; and as soon as they were admitted current at that Value, he produced an Order for paying and disbanding the Soldiers. Then those poor Fellows, and such as had maintain'd them, were forced to take their Pay, in those light Pieces of Eight, at six Shillings. But his Lordship soon after himself found the Inconvenience of that Proclamation; for People began to pay their Duties, and their Ship-money, in Coin of that high Estimate, which was like to cut short both his
Lord-

Lordship's Perquisites ; and so he was forced to make use of the same Prerogative, to reduce the Money again to its former Standard.

§. 122. In less than a Year the Lord *Colepepper* return'd to *England*, leaving Sir *Henry Chicheley* Deputy-Governor.

The Country being then settled again, made too much Tobacco, or too much trash Tobacco for the Market; and the Merchants would hardly allow the Planter any thing for it.

This occasion'd much Uneasiness again, and the People, from former Experience, despairing of succeeding in any Agreement with the neighbouring Governments, resolv'd a total Destruction of the Tobacco in that Country, especially of the Sweet-scented ; because that was planted no where else. In Pursuance of which Design, they contriv'd, that all the Plants should be destroy'd, while they were yet in the Beds, and after it was too late to sow more.

Accordingly the Ring-leaders in this Project began with their own first, and then went to cut up the Plants of such of their Neighbours as were not willing to do it themselves. However, they had not Resolution enough to go through with their Work.

This was adjudged Sedition and Felony. Several People were committed upon it, and some condemned to be hang'd. And afterwards the Assembly pass'd a Law to make such Proceedings Felony for the future, (whatever it was before) provided the Company kept together after warning by a Justice.

§. 123. After this Accident of Plant-cutting, the Lord *Colepepper* return'd, and held his second Assembly, in which he contriv'd to gain another
great

great Advantage over the Country. His Lordship, in his first Voyage thither, perceiving how easily he could twist and manage the People, conceived new Hopes of retrieving the Propriety of the Northern Neck, as being so small a Part of the Colony. He conceiv'd that while the Remainder escap'd free, which was far the greater Part, they would not engage in the Interest of the lesser Number; especially considering the Discouragements they had met with before, in their former Solicitation: Tho' all this while, and for many Years afterwards, his Lordship did not pretend to lay public Claim to any part of the Propriety.

It did not square with this Project that Appeals should be made to the General Assembly, as till then had been the Custom. He fear'd the Burgesses would be too much in the Interest of their Countrymen, and adjudge the Inhabitants of the Northern Neck, to have an equal Liberty and Privilege in their Estates, with the rest of *Virginia*, as being settled upon the same Foot. In order therefore to make a better Penyworth of those poor People, he studied to overturn this odious Method of Appealing to the Assembly, and to fix the last Resort in another Court.

To bring this Point about, his Lordship contriv'd to blow up a Difference in the Assembly, between the Council and the Burgesses, privately encouraging the Burgesses, to insist upon the Privilege of determining all Appeals by themselves, exclusive of the Council; because they, having given their Opinions before in the General Court, were, for that Reason, unfit Judges in Appeals from themselves to the Assembly. This succeeded according to his Wish, and the Burgesses bit at the Bait, under the Notion of Privilege, never dreaming of the Snake that lay in the Grass, nor considering the Danger of altering an old Constitution

tion so abruptly. Thus my Lord gain'd his End ; for he represented that Quarrel with so many Aggravations, that he got an Instruction from the King, to take away all Appeals from the General Court to the Assembly, and cause them to be made to himself in Council, if the thing in Demand was of 300 *lib.* Value, otherwise no Appeal from the General Court.

§. 124. Of this his Lordship made sufficient Advantage ; for in the Confusion that happen'd in the End of King *James* the Second's Reign, viz. in *October*, 1688, he having got an Assignment from the other Patentees, gain'd a favourable Report from the King's Council at Law upon his Patent for the Northern Neck.

When he had succeeded in this, his Lordship's next Step was to engage some noted Inhabitant of the Place to be on his Side. Accordingly he made use of his Cousin Secretary *Spencer*, who liv'd in the said Neck, and was esteem'd as wise and great a Man as any of the Council. This Gentleman did but little in his Lordship's Service, and only gain'd some few Strays, that used to be claim'd by the Coroner, in Behalf of the King.

Upon the Death of Mr. Secretary *Spencer*, he engaged another noted Gentleman, an old Stander in that Country, tho' not of the Northern Neck, Col. *Philip Ludwell*, who was then in *England*. He went over with this Grant in the Year 1690, and set up an Office in the Neck, claiming some Escheats ; but he likewise could make nothing of it. After him Col. *George Brent* and Col. *William Fitz-Hugh*, that were noted Lawyers and Inhabitants of the said Neck, were employ'd in that Affair : But succeeded no better than their Predecessors. The People, in the mean while, complain'd frequently

frequently to their Assemblies, who at last made another Address to the King; but there being no Agent in *England* to prosecute it, that likewise miscarried. At last Colonel *Richard Lee*, one of the Council, a Man of Note and Inhabitant of the Northern Neck, privately made a Composition with the Proprietors themselves for his own Land. This broke the Ice, and several were induced to follow so great an Example; so that by Degrees, they were generally brought to pay their Quit-Rents into the Hands of the Proprietors Agents. And now at last it is managed for them by Col. *Robert Carter*, another of the Council, and the greatest Freeholder in that Proprietary.

§. 125. To return to my Lord *Colepepper's* Government, I cannot omit a useful thing which his Lordship was pleased to do, with Relation to their Courts of Justice. It seems, Nicety of Pleading, with all the Juggle of *Westminster-Hall*, was creeping into their Courts. The Clerks began in some Cases to enter the Reasons with the Judgments, pretending to set Precedents of inviolable Form to be observed in all future Proceedings. This my Lord found Fault with, and retrench'd all dilatory Pleas, as prejudicial to Justice, keeping the Courts close to the Merits of the Cause, in order to bring it to a speedy Determination, according to the Innocence of former Times, and caused the Judgments to be enter'd up short, without the Reason, alledging, that their Courts were not of so great Experience, as to be able to make Precedents to Posterity; who ought to be left at Liberty to determine, according to the Equity of the Controversy before them.

§. 128. In his Time also were dismantled the Forts built by Sir *Henry Chicheley* at the Heads of the
the

the Rivers, and the Forces there were disbanded, as being too great a Charge. The Assembly appointed small Parties of Light Horse in their Stead, to range by Turns upon the Frontiers. These being chosen out of the neighbouring Inhabitants, might afford to serve at easier Rates, and yet do the Business more effectually; they were raised under the Title or Name of Rangers.

§. 127. After this the Lord *Colepepper* return'd again for *England*, his second Stay not being much longer than the first; and Sir *Henry Chicheley* being dead, he proclaim'd his Kinsman Mr. Secretary *Spencer* President, tho' he was not the eldest Member of the Council.

§. 128. The next Year, being 1684, upon the Lord *Colepepper*'s refusing to return, *Francis* Lord *Howard* of *Effingham* was sent over Governor. In Order to increase his Perquisites, he imposed the Charge of an annual Under Seal of 20 *Shillings* each for School-masters; 5 *Lib.* for Lawyers at the General Court, and 50 *Shillings* each Lawyer at the County Courts. He also extorted an excessive Fee for putting the Seal to all Probates of Wills, and Letters of Administration, even where the Estates of the deceased were of the meanest Value. Neither could any be favour'd with such Administration, or Probate, without paying that Extortion. If any Body presum'd to remonstrate against it, his Lordship's Behaviour towards that Man was very severe. He kept several Persons in Prison, and under Confinement from Court to Court, without bringing them to Trial. Which Proceedings, and many others, were so oppressive, that Complaints were made thereof to the King, and Colonel *Philip Ludwell* was appointed

pointed Agent to appear against him in *England*: Whereupon the Seal-Money was taken off.

§. 129. During the first Session of Assembly in this noble Lord's Time, the Duty on Liquors imported from the other *English* Plantations, was first imposed. It was then laid on Pretence of lessening the Levy by the Poll, for Payment of public Taxes; but more especially for rebuilding the State-House, which had not been rebuilt, since *Lawrence* burnt it in *Bacon's* Time.

This Duty was at first laid on Wine and Rum only, at the Rate of three Pence *per* Gallon, with an Exemption of all such, as should be imported in the Ships of *Virginia* Owners. But the like Duty has since been laid on other Liquors also, and is raised to four Pence *per* Gallon on Wine, and Rum, and one Penny *per* Gallon on Beer, Cyder, Limejuice, &c. and the Privilege of *Virginia* Owners taken away, to the great Discouragement of their Shipping, and Home Trade.

§. 130. This Lord, though he pretended to no great Skill in legal Proceedings, yet he made great Innovations in their Courts, pretending to follow the *English* Forms. Thus he created a new Court of *Chancery*, distinct from the General Court, who had ever before claim'd that Jurisdiction. He erected himself into a Lord Chancellor, taking the Gentlemen of the Council, to sit with him as meer Associates and Advisers, not having any Vote in the Causes before them. And that it might have more the Air of a new Court, he would not so much as sit in the State-House, where all the other public Business was dispatch'd, but took the Dining-Room of a large House for that Use. He likewise made arbitrary Tables of Fees, peculiar to this High Court. However, his Lordship not beginning this
Project

Project very long before he left the Country, all these Innovations came to an End upon his Removal; and the Jurisdiction return'd to the General Court again, in the Time of Col. *Nath. Bacon*, whom he left President.

§. 131. During that Gentleman's Presidency, which began *Anno* 1689, the Project of a College was first agreed upon. The Contrivers drew up their Scheme, and presented it to the President and Council. This was by them approved, and refer'd to the next Assembly. But Col. *Bacon's* Administration being very short, and no Assembly call'd all the while, this pious Design could proceed no farther.

§. 132. *Anno* 1690: *Francis Nicholson*, Esq; being appointed Lieutenant-Governor under the Lord *Effingham*, arrived there. This Gentleman discoursed freely of Country Improvements, instituted public Exercises, and gave Prizes to all those, that should excel in the Exercises of Riding, Running, Shooting, Wrestling, and Cudgeling. When the Design of a College was communicated to him, he promised it all imaginable Encouragement. The first thing desir'd of him in its Behalf, was the Calling of an Assembly; but this he could by no Means agree to, being under Obligations to the Lord *Effingham*, to stave off Assemblies as long as he could, for Fear there might be farther Representations sent over against his Lordship, who was conscious to himself, how uneasie the Country had been under his desporick Administration.

§. 133. When that could not be obtain'd, then they propos'd, that a Subscription might pass thro' the Colony, to try the Humour of the People in general, and see what voluntary Contributions they could get towards it. This he granted, and he himself,

himself, together with the Council, set a generous Example to the other Gentlemen of the Country; so that the Subscriptions at last amounted to about two thousand five hundred Pounds; in which Sum is included the generous Benevolences of several Merchants of *London*.

§. 34. *Anno* 1691, an Assembly being called, this Design was moved to them, and they espoused it heartily; and soon after made an Address to King *William* and Queen *Mary*, in its Behalf, and sent the reverend Mr. *James Blair* their Agent to *England*, to solicit their Majesties Charter for it.

It was proposed that three things should be taught in this College *viz.* Languages, Divinity, and Natural Philosophy.

The Assembly was so fond of Governor *Nicholson* at that Time, that they presented him with the Sum of three hundred Pounds, as a Testimony of their good Disposition towards him. But he having an Instruction to receive no Present from the Country, they drew up an Address to their Majesties, praying that he might have leave to accept it, which was granted, and he gave one half thereof to the College.

§. 137. Their Majesties were well pleased with that pious Design of the Plantation, and granted a Charter, according to the Desire of Mr. *Blair*, their Agent.

Their Majesties were graciously pleased to give near two thousand Pounds Sterling, the Balance then due upon the Account of Quit-Rents, towards the Founding the College; and towards the endowing of it, they allow'd twenty thousand Acres of choice Land, together with the Revenue arising by the *Peny per Pound*, on Tobacco exported from *Virginia* and *Maryland* to the other Plantations.

It was a great Satisfaction to the Archbishops and Bishops to see such a Nursery of Religion founded

founded in that new World; especially for that it was begun in an Episcopal Way, and carried on wholly by zealous Conformists to the Church of *England*.

§. 138. In this first Assembly, Lieutenant-Governor *Nicholson* pass'd Acts for Encouragement of the Linen Manufacture, and to promote the Leather Trade, by Tanning, Currying, and Shoe-making. He also in that Session pass'd a Law for Cohabitation, and Improvement of Trade.

Before the next Assembly he tack'd about, and was quite the Reverse of what he was in the first as to Cohabitation. Instead of encouraging Ports and Towns, he spread abroad his dislike of them; and went among the People, finding Fault with those Things, which he and the Assembly had unanimously agreed upon the preceding Session. Such a violent Change there was in him, that it proceeded from some other Cause, than barely the Inconstancy of his Temper. He had receiv'd Directions from those *English* Merchants, who well knew that Cohabitation would lessen their consign'd Trade.

§. 139. In *February*, 1692, Sir *Edmund Andros* arrived Governor. He began his Government with an Assembly, which overthrew the good Design of Ports and Towns: But the Ground-work of this Proceeding, was laid before Sir *Edmund's* Arrival. However, this Assembly proceeded no farther, than to suspend the Law, till their Majesties Pleasure should be known. But it seems the Merchants in *London* were dissatisfied, and made public Complaints against it, which their Majesties were pleas'd to hear; and afterwards refer'd the Law back to the Assembly again, to consider, if it were suitable to the Circumstances of the Country, and to regulate it accordingly. But the Assembly did not then proceed any farther in it; the

People themselves being infected by the Merchants Letters.

§. 140. At this Session Mr. *Neal's* Project for a Post-Office, and his Patent of Post-Master-General in those Parts of *America*, were presented. The Assembly made an Act to promote that Design; but by reason of the inconvenient Distance of their Habitations, and want of Towns, this Project fell to nothing.

§. 141. With Sir *Edmund Andros* was sent over the College Charter; and the subsequent Assembly declared, that the Subscriptions which had been made to the College, were due, and immediately demandable. They likewise gave a Duty on the Exportation of Skins, and Furs, for its more plentiful Endowment; and the Foundation of the College was laid.

The Subscription-Money did not come in with the same readiness, with which it had been underwritten. However, there was enough given by their Majesties, and gather'd from the People, to keep all Hands at work, and carry on the Building, the Foundation whereof they then laid; and the rest, upon Suit, had Judgment given against them.

§. 142. Sir *Edmund Andros* was a great Encourager of Manufactures. In his Time Fulling-Mills were set up by Act of Assembly. He also gave particular Marks of his Favour towards the propagating of Cotton, which since his Time has been much neglected. He was likewise a great Lover of Method, and Dispatch in all Sorts of Business, which made him find Fault with the Management of the Secretaries Office. And, indeed, with very good Reason; for from the Time of *Bacon's* Rebellion, till then, there never was any Office in the World more negligently kept. Several Patents of Land were enter'd Blank upon Record; many

many original Patents, Records, and Deeds of Land, with other Matters of great Consequence, were thrown loose about the Office, and suffer'd to be dirtied, torn, and eaten by the Moths, and other Insects. But upon this Gentleman's Accession to the Government, he immediately gave Directions, to reform all these Irregularities; he caused the loose and torn Records of Value to be transcribed into new Books; and order'd Conveniences to be built within the Office, for preserving the Records from being lost and confounded, as before. He prescribed Methods to keep the Papers dry and clean, and to reduce them into such Order, as that any thing might be turn'd to immediately. But all these Conveniences were burnt soon after they were finished, in *October*, 1698, together with the Office itself, and the whole State-house. But his Diligence was so great in that Affair, that tho' his Stay afterward in the Country was very short; yet he caused all the Records, and Papers, which had been sav'd from the Fire, to be sort'd again, and Register'd in Order, and indeed in much better Order, than ever they had been before. In this Condition he left 'em at his quitting the Government.

He made several Offers to rebuild the State-house in the same Place; and had his Government continued but six Months longer, 'tis probable he would have effected it after such a Manner, as might have been least burthensome to the People, designing the greatest Part at his own Cost.

§. 143. Sir *Edmund Andros* being upon a Progress one Summer, call'd at a poor Man's House in *Stafford* County for Water. There came out to him an ancient Woman, and with her, a lively brisk Lad about twelve Years old. The Lad was so ruddy, and fair, that his Complexion gave the Governor a Curiosity to ask some Questions con-

cerning him; and to his great surprize was told, that he was the Son of that Woman at 76 Years of Age. His Excellency, smiling at this Improbability, enquir'd what sort of Man had been his Father? To this the good Woman made no reply, but instantly ran, and led her Husband to the Door, who was then above 100 Years old. He confirm'd all that the Woman had said about the Lad, and, notwithstanding his great Age, was strong in his Limbs, and Voice; but had lost his Sight. The Woman for her part was without Complaint, and seem'd to retain a Vigor very uncommon at her Years. Sir *Edmund* was so well pleas'd with this extraordinary Account, that, after having made himself known to them, he offer'd to take care of the Lad: But they would by no means be perswaded to part with him. However, he gave them 20 Pounds.

§. 145. In *November*, 1698. *Francis Nicholson*, Esq; was removed from *Maryland*, to be Governor of *Virginia*. But he went not then with that Smoothness on his Brow, he had carry'd with him when he was appointed Lieutenant-Governour. He talk'd then no more of improving of Manufactures, Towns, and Trade. But instead of encouraging the Manufactures, he sent over inhuman Memorials against them, opposite to all Reason. In one of these, he remonstrates, *That the Tobacco of that Country often bears so low a Price, that it would not yield Cloaths to the People that make it; and yet presently after, in the same Memorial, he recommends it to the Parliament, to pass an Act, forbidding the Plantations to make their own Cloathing; which, in other Words, is desiring a charitable Law, that the Planters shall go naked.* In a late Memorial concerted between him and his Creature Col. *Quarrey*, 'tis most humbly propos'd, *That all the English Colonies on the Continent of North America*

rica, be reduced under one Government, and under one Vice-Roy; and that a standing Army be there kept on foot, to subdue the Queen's Enemies; surmising that they were intending to set up for themselves.

§. 145. He began his Government with a Shew of Zeal for the Church: In the latter End of his Time, one half of the intended Building, that is two sides of the Square was carried up and finished, in which were allotted the public Hall, the Apartments and Conveniences for several Masters and Scholars, and the public Offices for the Domesticks; the Masters and Scholars were also settled in it: And it had its regular Visitations from the Visitors and Governors thereof.

§. 146. Soon after his Accession to the Government, he procured the Assembly, and Courts of Judicature, to be remov'd from *James Town*, where there were good Accommodations for People, to *Middle Plantation*, where there were none. There he flatter'd himself with the fond Imagination, of being the Founder of a new City. He mark'd out the Streets in many Places, so as that they might represent the Figure of a *W*, in Memory of his late Majesty King *William*, after whose Name the Town was call'd *Williamsburgh*. There he procur'd a stately Fabrick to be erected, which he placed opposite to the College, and graced it with the magnificent Name of the *Capitol*.

§. 147. In the 2^d Year of this Gentleman's Government; there happen'd an Adventure very fortunate for him, which gave him much credit; and that was the taking of a Pyrate within the Capes of that Country.

It fell out that several Merchant-Ships were got ready, and fallen down to *Lynhaven* Bay, near the Mouth of *James* River, in order for sailing. A Pyrate being inform'd of this, and hearing that there was no Man of War there, except a sixth Rate, ventured within the Capes, and took several of the Merchant-Ships. But a small Vessel happen'd to come down the Bay, and seeing an Engagement between the Pyrate, and a Merchantman, made a shift to get into the Mouth of *James* River, where the *Shoram*, a fifth Rate Man of War, was newly arriv'd. The sixth Rate, commanded by Capt. *John Aldred*, was then on the *Careen* in *Elizabeth* River, in order for her Return to *England*.

The Governor happen'd to be at that time at *Kiquotan*, sealing up his Letters, and Capt. *Passenger*, Commander of the *Shoram*, was ashoar, to pay his Respects to him. In the mean while News was brought, that a Pyrate was within the Capes; upon which the Captain was in haste to go aboard his Ship: But the Governor stay'd him a little, promising to go along with him. The Captain soon after ask'd his Excuse, and went off, leaving him another Boat, if he pleas'd to follow. It was about one a Clock in the Afternoon, when the News was brought; but 'twas within Night, before his Excellency went aboard, staying all that while ashoar, upon some weighty Occasions. At last he follow'd, and by break of Day, the Man of War was fairly out between the Capes, and the Pyrate; where after ten Hours sharp Engagement, the Pyrate was oblig'd to strike, and surrender, upon the Terms of being left to the King's Mercy.

Now it happen'd, that three Men of this Pyrate's Gang were not on Board their own Ship at the time of the Surrender, and so were not included

ded in the Articles of Capitulation, but were try'd in that Country. In summing up the Charge against them (the Governor being present) the Attorney-General extoll'd his Excellency's mighty Courage and Conduct, as if the Honour of taking the Pyrate had been due to him. Upon this, Capt. *Passenger* took the Freedom to interrupt Mr. Attorney in open Court, and said, that he was Commander of the *Shoram*; that the Pyrates were his Prisoners; and that no Body had pretended to command in that Engagement but himself: He farther desir'd, that the Governor who was then present, would do him the Justice to confess, whether he had given the least Word of Command all that Day, or directed any one Thing during the whole Fight. This, his Excellency acknowledged, was true; and fairly yielded the Honour of that Exploit to the Captain.

§. 148. This Governor likewise gain'd some Reputation by another Instance of his Management, whereby he let the World know, the violent Passion he had to publish his own Fame.

To get Honour in *New-York*, he had zealously recommended to the Court of *England*, the necessity that *Virginia* shou'd contribute a certain *Quota* of Men, or else a Sum of Money, towards the building, and maintaining a Fort at *New-York*. The Reason he gave for this, was, because *New-York* was their Barrier, and as such it was but Justice, they shou'd help to defend it. This was by Order of his late Majesty King *William* proposed to the Assembly: But upon the most solid Reasons, they humbly remonstrated, *That neither the Forts then in being, nor any other that might be built in the Province of New-York, cou'd in the least avail to the Defence and Security of Virginia; for that either the French, or the Northern Indians might invade that Colony, and not come within an*

hundred Miles of any such Fort. The Truth of these Objections are obvious to any one, that ever look'd on the Maps of that Part of the World. But the Secret of the whole Business in plain Terms was this: Those Forts were necessary for *New-York*, to enable that Province to engross the Trade of the Neighbour *Indians*; which *Virginia* had sometimes shar'd in, when the *Indians* rambled to the Southward.

Now the Glory Col. *Nicholson* got in that Affair, was this; after he had represented *Virginia* as Republican, and Rebellious, for not complying with his Proposal, he said publicly, that *New-York* should not want the 900 Pounds, tho' he paid it out of his own Pocket, and soon after took a Journey to that Province.

When he arrived there, he blam'd *Virginia* very much, but pretending earnest Desires to serve *New-York*, gave his own Bills of Exchange for 900 Pounds, to the aforesaid Use, but prudently took a Defiance from the Gentleman, to whom they were given, specifying, *That till her Majesty should be graciously pleased, to remit him the Money out of the Quit-Rents of Virginia, those Bills shou'd never be made use of.* This was an admirable Piece of sham Generosity, and worthy of the great Pains he took to proclaim it. I my self have frequently heard him boast, that he gave this Money out of his own Pocket, and only depended on the Queen's Bounty to repay him: Tho the Money is not paid by him to this Day.

§. 149. Neither was he contented to spread abroad this Untruth there; but he also foisted it into a Memorial of Col. *Quarry's* to the Council of Trade, in which are these Words: *As soon as Governor Nicholson found the Assembly of Virginia wou'd not see their own Interest, nor comply with her Majesty's Orders, he wnt immediately to New-York;*
and

and out of his great Zeal to the Queen's Service, and the security of her Province, he gave his own Bills for 900 Pounds to answer the Quota of Virginia, wholly depending on her Majesty's Favour, to reimburse him out of the Revenues in that Province.

Certainly his Excellency, and Col. Quarry, by whose joint Wisdom and Sincerity this Memorial was composed, must believe that the *Council of Trade* have very imperfect Intelligence, how Matters pass in that Part of the World, or else they would not presume to impose such a Banter upon them.

But this is nothing, if compar'd to some other Passages of that unjust Representation, wherein they took upon them to describe the People of *Virginia*, to be both numerous and rich, of *Republican Notions and Principles*, such as ought to be corrected, and lower'd in time; and that then, or never was the Time to maintain the *Queen's Prerogative*, and put a stop to those wrong pernicious Notions, which were improving daily, not only in *Virginia*, but in all her Majesty's other Governments. A Frown now from her Majesty, will do more than an Army hereafter, &c.

With those inhuman false Imputations, did those Gentlemen afterwards introduce the Necessity of a standing Army.

§. 150. Thus did this Gentleman continue to rule till *August 1705*, when *Edward Nott Esq;* arrived Governor, and gave ease to the Country by a mild Rule. His Commission was to be Governor General, but part of his Salary was paid my Lord *Orkney* as Chief. Governor *Nott* had the general Commission given him, because it was suggested, that that Method, viz. the supreme Title would give the greater Awe, and the better put the Country to rights.

§. 151. Governor *Nott* call'd an Assembly the fall after his Arrival, who past the general Revival of the Laws, which had been too long in Hand: But that Part of it which related to the Church and Clergy Mr. Commissary could not be pleased in; wherefore that Bill was dropt, and so it lies at this Day.

§. 152. This Assembly also passed a new Law, for Ports and Towns, grounding it only upon Encouragements, according to her Majesty's Letter to that purpose; but it seems this also could not please the *Virginia* Merchants in *England*, for they complained against it to the Crown, and so it was also suspended.

§. 153. This Assembly also past the Law making Slaves a real Estate, which made a great Alteration in the Nature of their Estates, and becomes a very good Security for Orphans, whose Parents happen'd to die intestate.

§. 154. This Assembly also voted a House to be built for the Governor's Residence, and laid Duties to raise the Money for it. But his Excellency lived not to see much effected therein, being taken off by Death in *August* 1706. In the first Year of his Government, the College was burnt down to the Ground.

§. 155. After this Governor's Death, there being no other nominated by her Majesty to succeed him, the Government fell into the Hands of *Edmund Jennings* Esq; the President, and the Council, who held no Assembly during his time, neither did any thing of Note happen here. Only we heard that Brigadier *Robert Hunter* receiv'd Commission to be
Lieut-

Lieutenant Governor under *George* Earl of *Orkney* the chief, and set out for *Virginia*, but was taken Prisoner into *France*.

§. 156. During Brigadier *Hunter's* Confinement in *France* a new Commission issued to Colonel *Alexander Spotswood* to be Lieutenant Governor, who arrived here in *Anno* 1710. He to the extraordinary Benefit of this Country still continues Governor, having improved it beyond Imagination; his Conduct has produced Wonders; but it would not become me to affront his Modesty by publishing those innumerable Benefits of his Administration to his Face; therefore I shall leave them to adorn the brighter History of some abler Penman.





Of the NATURAL
Product and Conveniencies
OF
VIRGINIA:
IN ITS
Unimprov'd STATE, before
the *English* went thither.

BOOK II.

CHAP. I.

Of the Bounds and Coast of Virginia.

§. I.



VIRGINIA, as you have heard before, was a Name at first given, to all the Northern Part of the Continent of *America*; and when the original Grant was made, both to the first and second Colonies, that is, to those

those of *Virginia*, and *New-England*, they were both granted under the Name of *Virginia*. And afterwards, when Grants for other new Colonies were made, by particular Names, those Names for a long time served only to distinguish them, as so many Parts of *Virginia*: And until the Plantations became more familiar to *England*, it was so continued. But in Process of Time, the Name of *Virginia* was lost to all, except to that Tract of Land lying along the Bay of *Chesapeak*, and a little to the Southward, in which are included *Virginia* and *Maryland*; both which, in common Discourse, are still very often meant by the Name of *Virginia*.

The least Extent of Bounds in any of the Grants made to *Virginia*, since it was settled, and which we find upon Record there, is two hundred Miles North from Point *Comfort*, and two hundred Miles South; winding upon the Sea-Coast to the Eastward, and including all the Land West and North-West, from Sea to Sea; with the Islands on both Seas, within an hundred Miles of the Main. But these Extents both on the North and South, have been since abridg'd by the proprietary Grants of *Maryland* on the North, and *Carolina* on the South.

§. 2. The Entrance into *Virginia* for Shipping, is by the Mouth of *Chesapeak* Bay, which is indeed more like a River, than a Bay: For it runs up into the Land about two hundred Miles, being every where near as wide, as it is at the Mouth, and in many Places much wider. The Mouth thereof is about seven Leagues over, through which all Ships pass to go to *Maryland*.

The Coast is a bold and even Coast, with regular Soundings, and is open all the Year round: So that having the Latitude, which also can hardly be wanted, upon a Coast where so much clear

Weather is, any Ship may go in by Soundings alone, by Day or Night, in Summer or in Winter; and need not fear any Disaster, if the Mariners understand any thing; for, let the Wind blow how it will, and chop about as suddenly as it pleases, any Master, tho' his Ship be never so dull, has Opportunity (by the Evenness of the Coast) either of standing off, and clearing the Shoar; or else of running into safe Harbour within the Capes. A bolder and safer Coast is not known in the Universe; to which Conveniencies, there's the Addition of good Anchorage all along upon it, without the Capes.

§. 3. *Virginia*, in the most restrain'd Sense, distinct from *Maryland*, is the Spot to which I shall altogether confine this Description; tho' you may consider at the same time, that there cannot be much Difference between this, and *Maryland*, they being contiguous one to the other, lying in the same Bay, producing the same Sort of Commodities, and being fallen into the same unhappy Form of Settlements, altogether upon Country Seats, without Towns. *Virginia* thus consider'd, is bounded on the South by *North Carolina*; on the North by *Patowmeck River*, which divides it from *Maryland*; on the East by the main Ocean, called the *Virginia Seas*; and on the West and North-West by the *Californian Sea*, whenever the Settlements shall be extended so far, or now by the River *Mississippi*.

This Part of *Virginia* now inhabited, if we consider the Improvements in the Hands of the *English*, it cannot upon that Score be commended; but if we consider its natural Aptitude to be improv'd, it may with Justice be accounted one of the finest Countries in the World. Most of the natural Advantages of it therefore, I shall endeavour to discover, and set in their true Light, together with its Inconveniencies; and afterwards proceed to the Improvements.

C H A P. II.

Of the W A T E R S.

§. 4. **T**HE Largeness of the Bay of *Chesapeak* I have mention'd already. From one End of it to the other, there's good Anchorage, and so little Danger of a Wreck, that many Masters, who have never been there before, venture up to the Head of the Bay, upon the slender Knowledge of a common Sailor. But the Experience of one Voyage teaches any Master to go up afterwards, without a Pilot.

Besides this Bay, the Country is water'd with four great Rivers, *viz. James, York, Rappahannock, and Patowmeck Rivers*; all which are full of convenient and safe Harbours. There are also abundance of lesser Rivers, many of which are capable of receiving the biggest Merchant-Ships, *viz. Elizabeth River, Nansamond, Chickahomony, Pocofon, Pamunky, Mattapony*, (which two last are the two upper Branches of *York River*) *North River, Eastermost River, Corotoman, Wiccocomoco, Pocomoke, Chiffenessick, Pungotegue*, and many others: But because they are so well describ'd in the large Maps of *Virginia*, I shall forbear any farther Description of them.

These Rivers are of such Convenience, that, for almost every half dozen Miles of their Extent, there's a commodious and safe Road for a whole Fleet; which gives Opportunity to the Masters of Ships, to lye up and down straggling, according as they have made their Acquaintance, riding before that Gentleman's Door where they find the best Reception, or where 'tis most suitable to their Business.

§. 5. These

§. 5. These Rivers are made up, by the Conflux of an infinite Number of chrystal Springs of cool and pleasant Water, issuing every where out of the Banks, and Sides of the Valleys. These Springs flow so plentifully, that they make the River Water fresh, fifty, threecore, and sometimes an hundred Miles below the Flux and Reflux of the Tides; and sometime within thirty or forty Miles of the Bay it self. The Conveniencies of these Springs are so many, they are not to be number'd: I shall therefore content my self to mention that one of supplying the Country else where, except in the low Lands, with as many Mills as they can find Work for: And some of these send forth such a Glut of Water, that in less than a Mile below the Fountain-head, they afford a Stream sufficient to supply a Grist-Mill; of which there are several Instances.

§. 6. The only Mischief I know belonging to these Rivers is, that in the Month of *June* annually, there rise up in the Salts, vast Beds of Seedling-Worms, which enter the Ships, Sloops, or Boats where-ever they find the Coat of Pitch, Tar, or Lime worn off the Timber; and by degrees eat the Plank into Cells like those of an Honey-comb. These Worms continue thus upon the Surface of the Water, from their Rise in *June*, until the first great Rains, after the Middle of *July*; but after that, do no fresh Damage till the next Summer-Season, and never penetrate farther than the Plank or Timber they first fix upon.

The Damage occasion'd by these Worms, may be four several Ways avoided.

1. By keeping the Coat, (of Pitch, Lime and Tallow, or whatever else it is,) whole upon the Bottom of the Ship or Vessel, for these Worms
never

never fasten nor enter, but where the Timber is naked.

2. By anchoring the large Vessels in the Strength of the Tide, during the Worm-Season, and haling the smaller ashore; for in the Current of a strong Tide, the Worm cannot fasten.

3. By burning and cleaning immediately after the Worm-Season is over; for then they are but just stuck into the Plank, and have not buried themselves in it; so that the least Fire in the World destroys them entirely, and prevents all Damage, that would otherwise ensue from them.

4. By running up into the Freshes with the Ship or Vessel during the five or six Weeks, that the Worm is thus above Water: For they never enter, nor do any Damage in fresh Water, or where it is not very salt.



C H A P. III.

Of the E A R T H S, and S O I L.

§. 7. **T**H E Soil is of such Variety, according to the Difference of Situation, that one Part or other of it, seems fitted to every Sort of Plant, that is requisite either for the Benefit or Pleasure of Mankind. And, were it not for the high Mountains to the North-West, which are supposed to retain vast Magazines of Snow, and by that means cause the Wind from that Quarter to descend a little too cold upon them, 'tis believed, that many of those delicious Summer Fruits, growing in the hotter Climates, might be kept there green all the Winter, without the Charge of Housing, or any other Care, than what is due to the natural Plants of the Country, when transplanted into a Garden. But,

as that would be no considerable Charge, any Man that is curious might, with all the Ease imaginable, preserve as many of them as would gratify a moderate Luxury; and the Summer affords genial Heat enough, to ripen them to Perfection.

There are three different Kinds of Land, according to the Difference of Situation, either in the lower Parts of the Country, the Middle, or that on the Heads of the Rivers.

1. The Land towards the Mouth of the Rivers is generally of a low moist and fat Mold, such as the heavier Sort of Grain delight in, as Rice, Hemp, *Indian* Corn, &c. This also is varied here and there with Veins of a cold, hungry, sandy Soil, of the same Moisture, and very often lying under Water. But this also has its Advantages; for on such Land, generally grow the Huckle-berries, Cran-berries, Chinkapins, &c. These low Lands are, for the most part, well stor'd with Oaks, Poplars, Pines, Cedars, Cypress, and Sweet-Gums; the Trunks of which are often thirty, forty, fifty, some sixty or seventy Foot high, without a Branch or Limb. They likewise produce great Variety of Evergreens, unknown to me by Name, besides the beautiful Holly, Sweet-Myrtle, Cedar, and the Live-Oak, which for three Quarters of the Year is continually dropping its Acorns, and at the same time budding, and bearing others in their Stead.

2. The Land higher up the Rivers throughout the whole Country, is generally a level Ground, with shallow Vallies, full of Streams and pleasant Springs of clear Water, having interspers'd here and there among the large Levels, some small Hills, and extensive Vales. The Mold in some Places is black, fat, and thick laid; in others looser, lighter, and thin. The Foundation of the Mold is also various; sometimes Clay, then Gravel and rocky Stones; and some-

Wasebur, an Herb; *Chapacour*, a Root; and *Tangomockonominge*, a Bark.

There's the Snake-Root, so much admired in *England* for a Cordial, and for being a great Antidote in all Pestilential Distempers.

There's the Rattle-Snake-Root, to which no Remedy was ever yet found comparable; for it effectually cures the Bite of a Rattle-Snake, which sometimes has been mortal in two Minutes. If this Medicine be early applied, it presently removes the Infection, and in two or three Hours, restores the Patient to as perfect Health, as if he had never been hurt.

The *James Town Weed* (which resembles the thorny Apple of *Peru*, and I take to be the Plant so call'd) is supposed to be one of the greatest Coolers in the World. This being an early Plant, was gather'd very young for a boil'd Salad, by some of the Soldiers sent thither, to quell the Rebellion of *Bacon*; and some of them eat plentifully of it, the Effect of which was a very pleasant Comedy; for they turn'd natural Fools upon it for several Days: One would blow up a Feather in the Air; another would dart Straws at it with much Fury; and another stark naked was sitting up in a Corner, like a Monkey, grinning and making Mows at them; a Fourth would fondly kiss, and paw his Companions, and sneer in their Faces, with a Countenance more antick, than any in a *Dutch Droll*. In this frantick Condition they were confined, lest they should in their Folly destroy themselves; though it was observed, that all their Actions were full of Innocence and good Nature. Indeed they were not very cleanly; for they would have wallow'd in their own Excrements, if they had not been prevented. A thousand such simple Tricks they play'd, and after eleven Days, return'd to themselves again, not remembering any thing that had pass'd.

Perhaps this was the same Herb that *Mark Antony's* Army met with in his Retreat from the *Parthian War* and Siege of *Phraata*, when such as had eaten thereof employed themselves with much Earnestness and Industry in grubbing up Stones, and removing them from one Place to another, as if it had been a Business of the greatest Consequence. Wine, as the Story says, was found a sovereign Remedy for it; which is likely enough, the Malignity of this Herb being cold.

Of spontaneous Flowers they have an unknown Variety: The finest Crown Imperial in the World; the Cardinal-Flower, so much extoll'd for its Scarlet Colour, is almost in every Branch; the Moccasin Flower, and a thousand others, not yet known, to *English* Herbalists. Almost all the Year round, the Levels and Vales are beautified with Flowers of one Kind or other, which make their Woods as fragrant as a Garden. From the Materials their wild Bees make vast Quantities of Honey, but their Magazines are very often rifled, by Bears, Raccoons, and such like liquorish Vermin.

About the Year 1701, walking out to take the Air, I found, a little without my Pasture Fence, a Flower as big as a Tulip, and upon a Stalk resembling the Stalk of a Tulip. The Flower was of a Flesh Colour, having a Down upon one End, while the other was plain. The Form of it resembled the *Pudenda* of a Man and Woman lovingly join'd in one. Not long after I had discover'd this Rarity, and while it was still in Bloom, I drew a grave Gentleman, about an Hundred Yards, out of his Way, to see this Curiosity, not telling him any thing more, than that it was a Rarity, and such, perhaps, as he had never seen, nor heard of. When we arrived at the Place, I gather'd one of them, and put it into his Hand, which he had no sooner cast his Eye upon, but he threw it away with Indignation,

on, as being aſham'd of this Waggey of Nature. It was impoſſible to perſuade him to touch it again, or ſo much as to ſquint towards ſo immodest a Representation. Neither would I preſume to mention ſuch an Indecency, but that I thought it unpardonable, to omit a Production ſo extraordinary.

There is alſo found, the fine Tulip-bearing Laurel-Tree, which has the pleaſanteſt Smell in the World, and keeps Bloſſoming and Seeding ſeveral Months together: It delights much in Gravelly Branches of Chryſtal Streams, and perfumes the very Woods with its Odour. So alſo do the large Tulip-Tree, which we call a Poplar, the Locuſt, which reſembles much the Jaſmine, and the Perfuming Crab-Tree, during their Season. With one ſort or other of theſe, as well as many other Sweet-flowering Trees not named, the Vales are almoſt every-where adorn'd, and yield a ſurprizing Variety to divert the Traveller.

They find a World of Medicinal Plants likewiſe in that Country; and amongſt the reſt, the Planters pretend to have a Swamp-Root, which infallibly cures all Fevers, and Agues. The Bark of the Saffaſras-Tree and wild Cherry-Tree have been experimented to partake very much of the Virtue of the *Cortex Peruviana*. The Bark of the Root, of that which we call the Prickly Aſh, being dried and powder'd, has been found to be a Specifick, in old Ulcers, and Long-running Sores. Infinite is the Number of other valuable Vegetables of every Kind: But Natural Hiſtory not having been my Study, I am unwilling to do Wrong to my Subject, by an unſkilful Deſcription.

§. 19. Several Kinds of the Creeping Vines bearing Fruit, the *Indians* planted in their Gardens or Fields, becauſe they wou'd have Plenty of them always at hand; ſuch as, Muſk-melons,

Water-melons, Pompions, Cusshaws, Macocks, and Gourds.

1. Their Musk-melons resemble the large *Italian* Kind, and generally fill four or five Quarts.

2. Their Water-melons were much more large, and of several Kinds, distinguished by the Colour of their Meat and Seed; some are red, some yellow, and others white meated; and so of the Seed, some are yellow, some red, and some black; but these are never of different Colours in the same Melon. This Fruit the *Muscovites* call *Arpus*; the *Turks* and *Tartars*, *Karpus*, because they are extremely cooling: The *Persians* call them, *Hindnanes*, because they had the first Seed of them from the *Indies*. They are excellently good, and very pleasant to the Taste, as also to the Eye; having the Rind of a lively green Colour, streak'd and water'd, the Meat of a Carnation, and the Seed black, and shining, while it lies in the Melon.

3. Their Pompions I need not describe, but must say they are much larger and finer, than any I ever heard of in *England*.

4. Their *Cusshaws* are a kind of Pompion, of a blueish green Colour, streak'd with White, when they are fit for Use. They are larger than the Pompions, and have a long narrow Neck: Perhaps this may be the *Ecushaw* of *T. Harriot*.

5. Their *Macocks* are a sort of *Melopepones*, or lesser sort of Pompion, or Cashaw. Of these they have great Variety; but the *Indian* Name *Macock* serves for all, which Name is still retain'd among them. Yet the *Clypeatæ* are sometimes call'd *Cymnells* (as are some others also) from the *Lenten* Cake of that Name, which many of them very much resemble. *Squash*, or *Squanter-Squash*, is their Name among the Northern *Indians*, and so they are call'd in *New-York*, and *New-England*. These being boil'd whole, when the Apple is young, and the

Shell tender, and dished with Cream or Butter, relish very well with all sorts of Butcher's Meat, either fresh or salt. And whereas the Pompion is never eaten till it be ripe, these are never eaten after they are ripe.

6. The *Indians* never eat the Gourds, but plant them for other Uses. Yet the *Persians*, who likewise abound with this sort of Fruit, eat the *Cucurbita Lagenaris*, which they call *Kabach*, boiling it while it is green, before it comes to its' full Maturity; For, when it is ripe, the Rind dries, and grows as hard as the Bark of a Tree, and the Meat within is so consumed, and dried away, that there is then nothing left but the Seed, which the *Indians* take clean out, and afterwards use the Shells instead of Flagons and Cups; as is done also in several other Parts of the World.

The *Maracock*, which is the Fruit of what we call the Passion Flower, our Natives did not take the Pains to plant, having enough of it growing every where, tho' they often eat it; this Fruit is about the Size of a Pullet's Egg.

§, 20. Besides all these, our Natives had originally amongst them, *Indian Corn*, Peas, Beans, Potatoes, and Tobacco.

This *Indian Corn* was the Staff of Food, upon which the *Indians* did ever depend; for when Sickness, bad Weather, War, or any other ill Accident kept them from Hunting, Fishing and Fowling; this, with the Addition of some Peas, Beans, and such other Fruits of the Earth, as were then in Season, was the Family's Dependence, and the Support of their Women and Children.

There are four Sorts of *Indian Corn*; two of which are early ripe, and two, late ripe; all growing in the same manner; every single Grain of this when planted, produces a tall upright Stalk, which

has several Ears hanging on the Sides of it, from six to ten Inches long. Each Ear is wrapt up in a Cover of many Folds, to protect it from the Injuries of the Weather. In every one of these Ears are several Rows of Grain, set close to one another, with no other Partition, but of a very thin Husk. So that oftentimes the Increase of this Grain amounts to above a Thousand for one.

The two Sorts which are early ripe, are distinguish'd only by the Size, which shews it self as well in the Grain, as in the Ear, and the Stalk. There is some Difference also in the Time of ripening.

The lesser Size of early ripe Corn, yields an Ear not much larger than the Handle of a Case Knife, and grows upon a Stalk, between three and four Foot high. Of this may be made two Crops in a Year, and, perhaps, there might be Heat enough in *England* to ripen it.

The larger Sort differs from the former only in Largeness, the Ear of this being seven or eight Inches long, as thick as a Child's Leg, and growing upon a Stalk nine or ten Foot high. This is fit for eating about the latter End of *June*, whereas the smaller Sort (generally speaking) affords Ears fit to roast by the Middle of *June*. The Grains of both these Sorts, are as plump and swell'd, as if the Skin were ready to burst.

The late ripe Corn is diversify'd by the Shape of the Grain only, without any Respect to the accidental Differences in Colour, some being blue, some red, some yellow, some white, and some streak'd. That therefore which makes the Distinction, is the Plumpness or Shrivelling of the Grain; the one looks as smooth, and as full as the early ripe Corn, and this they call *Flint-Corn*; the other has a larger Grain, and looks shrivell'd with a Dent on the Back of the Grain, as if it had never come to

Perfection; and this they call *She-Corn*. This is esteem'd by the Planters, as the best for Increase, and is universally chosen by them for planting; yet I can't see, but that this also produces the Flint-Corn, accidentally among the other.

All these Sorts are planted alike, in Rows, three, four or five Grains in a Hill, the larger Sort at four or five Foot Distance, the lesser Sort nearer. The *Indians* used to give it one or two Weedings, and make a Hill about it, and so the Labour was done. They likewise plant a Bean in the same Hill with the Corn, upon whose Stalk it sustains it self.

The *Indians* sow'd Peas sometimes in the Intervals of the Rows of Corn, but more generally in a Patch of Ground by themselves. They have an unknown Variety of them, (but all of a Kidney-Shape) some of which I have met with wild; but whence they had their *Indian* Corn, I can give no Account; for I don't believe that it was spontaneous in those Parts.

Their Potatoes are either red or white, about as long as a Boy's Leg, and sometimes as long and big as both the Leg and Thigh of a young Child, and very much resembling it in Shape. I take these Kinds to be the same with those, which are represented in the Herbals, to be *Spanish* Potatoes. I am sure, those call'd *English* or *Irish* Potatoes are nothing like these, either in Shape, Colour, or Taste. The Way of propagating Potatoes there, is by cutting the small ones to Pieces, and planting the Cuttings in Hills of loose Earth: But they are so tender, that it is very difficult to preserve them in the Winter; for the least Frost coming at them, rots and destroys them; and therefore People bury 'em under Ground, near the Fire-Hearth, all the Winter, until the Time comes, that their Seedings are to be set.

How the *Indians* order'd their Tobacco, I am not certain, they now depending chiefly upon the *English*,

for what they smoak: But I am inform'd they used to let it all run to Seed, only succouring the Leaves, to keep the Sprouts from growing upon, and starving them; and when it was ripe, they pull'd off the Leaves, cured them in the Sun, and laid them up for Use. But the Planters make a heavy Bustle with it now, and can't please the Market neither.



C H A P. V

Of the F I S H.

§. 21. **A**S for Fish, both of Fresh and Salt-Water, of Shell-Fish, and others, no Country can boast of more Variety, greater Plenty, or of better in their several Kinds.

In the Spring of the Year, Herrings come up in such abundance into their Brooks and Fords, to spawn, that it is almost impossible to ride through, without treading on them. Thus do those poor Creatures expose their own Lives to some Hazard, out of their Care to find a more convenient Reception for their Young, which are not yet alive. Thence it is, that at this Time of the Year, the Freshes of the Rivers, like that of the *Broadruck*, stink of Fish.

Besides these Herrings, there come up likewise into the Freshes from the Sea, Multitudes of Shads, Rocks, Sturgeon, and some few Lampreys, which fasten themselves to the Shad, as the *Remora* of *Imperatus* is said to do to the Shark of *Tiburone*. They continue their stay there about Three Months. The Shads at their first coming up are fat and fleshy; but they waste so extreamly in Milting and Spawning, that at their going down they are poor, and seem fuller of Bones, only because they have less
Flesh

Flesh. It is upon this Account, (I suppose) that those in the *Severn*, which in *Gloucester* they call *Twaits*, are said at first to want those intermusculary Bones, which afterwards they abound with. As these are in the Freshes, so the Salts afford at certain Times of the Year, many other Kinds of Fish in infinite Shoals, such as the Old-Wife, a Fish not much unlike an Herring, and the Sheep's-Head, a Sort of Fish, which they esteem in the Number of their best.

§. 22. There is likewise great Plenty of other Fish all the Summer long; and almost in every Part of the Rivers, and Brooks, there are found of different Kinds: Wherefore I shall not pretend to give a Detail of them; but venture to mention the Names only of such as I have eaten and seen my self, and so leave the rest to those, that are better skill'd in Natural History. However, I may add, that besides all those that I have met with my self, I have heard of a great many very good sorts, both in the Salts and Freshes; and such People too, as have not always spent their Time in that Country have commended them to me, beyond any they had ever eat before.

Those which I know of my self, I remember by the Names, of Herrings, Rocks, Sturgeons, Shads, Old-Wives, Sheep's-Heads, Black and red Drums, Trouts, Taylors, Green-Fish, Sun-Fish, Bass, Chub, Place, Flounders, Whittings, Fatbacks, Maids, Wives, Small-Turtle, Crabs, Oysters, Mussels, Cockles, Shrimps, Needle-Fish, Breme, Carp, Pike, Jack, Mulletts, Eels, Conger-Eels, Perch, and Cats, &c.

Those which I remember to have seen there, of the Kinds that are not eaten, are the Whale, Porpus, Shark, Dog-Fish, Garr, Stingray, Thornback, Saw-Fish, Toad-Fish, Frog-Fish, Land-Crabs, Fiddlers, and Periwinkles. One Day as I was halling a
Sain

Sain upon the Salts, I caught a small Fish, about two Inches and an Half long, in Shape something resembling a Scorpion, but of a dirty dark Colour; I was a little shie of handling it, tho', I believe, there was no Hurt in it. This I judged to be that Fish, which Mr. *Purchase* in his *Pilgrims*, and Capt. *Smith* in his *General History*, Pag. 28. affirm to be extreemly like *St. George's Dragon*, except only that it wants Feet and Wings. Governour *Spotswood* has one of them dried in full Shape.

§. 23. Before the Arrival of the *English* there, the *Indians* had Fish in such vast Plenty, that the Boys and Girls would take a pointed Stick, and strike the lesser sort, as they swam upon the Flats. The larger Fish, that kept in deeper Water, they were put to a little more Difficulty to take; But for these they made Weirs; that is, a Hedge of small riv'd Sticks, or Reeds, of the Thickness of a Man's Finger, these they wove together in a Row, with Straps of Green Oak, or other tough Wood, so close that the small Fish cou'd not pass through. Upon High-Water Mark, they pitched one End of this Hedge, and the other they extended into the River, to the Depth of eight or ten Foot, fastening it with Stakes, making Cods out from the Hedge on one side, almost at the End, and leaving a Gap for the Fish to go into them, which were contrived so, that the Fish could easily find their Passage into those Cods, when they were at the Gap, but not see their Way out again, when they were in: Thus if they offered to pass through, they were taken.

Sometimes they made such a Hedge as this, quite across a Creek at High-Water, and at Low would go into the Run, then contracted into a narrow Stream, and take out what Fish they pleased.

At the Falls of the Rivers, where the Water is shallow, and the Current strong, the *Indians* use
 * another

another kind of Weir, thus made : They make a Dam of loose Stone, whereof there is Plenty at hand, quite a-croſs the River, leaving one, two, or more Spaces or Trunnels, for the Water to paſs thro' ; at the Mouth of which they ſet a Pot of Reeds, wove in Form of a Cone, whoſe Baſe is about three Foot, and perpendicular ten, into which the Swiftneſs of the Current carries the Fiſh, and there lodges them.

The *Indian* Way of catching Sturgeon, when they came into the narrow part of the Rivers, was by a Man's clapping a Nooſe over their Tail, and by keeping faſt his Hold. Thus a Fiſh finding it ſelf entangled, would flounce, and often pull the Man under Water, and then that Man was counted a *Cockarouſe*, or brave Fellow, that would not let go ; till with Swimming, Wading and Diving, he had tired the Sturgeon, and brought it aſhore. Theſe Sturgeons would alſo often leap into their Canoes, in croſſing the River, as many of them do ſtill every Year, into the Boats of the *Engliſh*.

They have alſo another Way of Fiſhing like thoſe on the *Euxine* Sea, by the Help of a blazing Fire by Night. They make a Hearth in the Middle of their Canoe, raiſing it within two Inches of the Edge ; upon this they lay their burning Light-Wood, ſplit into ſmall Shivers, each Splinter whereof will blaze and burn End for End, like a Candle : 'Tis one Man's Work to attend his Fire and keep it flaming. At each End of the Canoe ſtands an *Indian*, with a Gig, or pointed Spear, ſetting the Canoe forward with the Butt-end of the Spear, as gently as he can, by that Means ſtealing upon the Fiſh, without any Noiſe, or diſturbance of the Water. Then they with great Dexterity, dart theſe Spears into the Fiſh, and ſo take them. Now there is a double Convenience in the Blaze of this Fire ; for it not only dazzles the Eyes of the Fiſh, which will

will lie still, glaring upon it, but likewise discovers the Bottom of the River clearly to the Fisherman, which the Day-light does not.

The following Print, I may justly affirm to be a very true Representation of the *Indian Fishery*.

Tab. I. *Represents the Indians in a Canoe with a Fire in the Middle, attended by a Boy and a Girl. In one End is a Net made of Silk Grass, which they use in Fishing their Weirs. Above is the Shape of their Weirs, and the Manner of setting a Weir-Wedge, a-cross the Mouth of a Creek.*

Note, That in Fishing their Weirs, they lay the Side of the Canoe to the Cods of the Weir, for the more convenient coming at them, and not with the End going into the Cods, as is set down in the Print: But we could not otherwise represent it here, lest we should have confounded the Shape of the Weir, with the Canoe.

In the Air you see a Fishing-Hawk flying away with a Fish, and a Bald-Eagle pursuing, to take it from him; the Bald-Eagle has always his Head and Tail white, and they carry such a Lustre with them, that the white thereof may be discern'd as far as you can see the Shape of the Bird; and seems, as if it were without Feathers, and thence it has its Name Bald-Eagle.

§. 24. 'Tis a good Diversion to observe, the Manner of the Fishing-Hawk's preying upon Fish, which may be seen every fair Day all the Summer long, and especially in a Morning. At the first coming of the Fish in the Spring, these Birds of Prey are surprizingly eager. I believe, in the Dead of Winter, they fish farther off at Sea, or remain among the craggy uninhabited Islands, upon the Sea Coast. I have often been pleasantly entertain'd, by seeing these Hawks take the Fish out of the
Water

Water, and as they were flying away with their Quarry, the Bald-Eagles take it from them again. I have often observ'd the first of these hover over the Water, and rest upon the Wing some Minutes together, without the least Change of Place, and then from a vast Height dart directly into the Water, and there plunge down for the Space of half a Minute, or more, and at last bring up with him a Fish, which he could hardly rise with; then, having got upon the Wing again, he would shake himself so powerfully, that he threw the Water like a Mist about him; afterwards away he'd fly to the Woods with his Game, if he were not overlook'd by the Bald-Eagle, and robb'd by the Way, which very frequently happens. For the Bald-Eagle no sooner perceives a Hawk that has taken his Prey, but he immediately pursues, and strives to get above him in the Air, which if he can once attain, the Hawk for Fear of being torn by him, lets the Fish drop, and so by the Loss of his Dinner compounds for his own Safety. The poor Fish is no sooner loosed from the Hawk's Talons, but the Eagle shoots himself, with wonderful Swiftnes, after it, and catches it in the Air, leaving all further Pursuit of the Hawk, which has no other Remedy, but to go and fish for another.

Walking once with a Gentleman in an Orchard by the River-side, early in the Spring, before the Fish were by us perceiv'd to appear in Shoal-Water, or near the Shores, and before any had been caught by the People; we heard a great Noise in the Air just over our Heads, and looking up, we saw an Eagle in close Pursuit of a Hawk, that had a great Fish in his Pounces. The Hawk was as low as the Apple-trees, before he would let go his Fish, thinking to recover the Wood, which was just by, where the Eagles dare never follow,
for

for Fear of bruising themselves. But, notwithstanding the Fish was drop'd so low, and tho' it did not fall above thirty Yards from us, yet we with our Hollowing, Running, and casting up our Hats, could hardly save the Fish from the Eagle, and if it had been let go two Yards higher, he would have got it: But we at last took Possession of it alive, carried it Home, and had it dressed forthwith. It serv'd five of us very plentifully for a Breakfast, and some to the Servants. This Fish was a Rock near two Foot long, very fat, and a great Rarity for the Time of Year, as well as for the manner of its being taken.

These Fishing-Hawks, in more plentiful Seasons, will catch a Fish, and loiter about with it in the Air, on purpose to have Chace with an Eagle; and when he does not appear soon enough, the Hawk will make a sawcy Noise, and insolently desie him. This has been frequently seen, by Persons who have observ'd their Fishings.



C H A P. VI.

Of wild Fowl, and hunted Game.

§. 25. **A**S in Summer, the Rivers and Creeks are fill'd with Fish, so in Winter they are in many Places cover'd with Fowl. There are such a Multitude of Swans, Geese, Brants, Shel-drakes, Ducks of several Sorts, Mallard, Teal, Blewings, and many other Kinds of Water-Fowl, that the Plenty of them is incredible. I am but a small Sports-man, yet with a Fowling-Piece, have kill'd above twenty of them at a Shot. In like manner are the Mill-ponds, and great Runs in the Woods

Woods stor'd with these Wild-Fowl, at certain Seasons of the Year.

§. 26. The Shores, Marshy Grounds, Swamps, and Savanna's, are also stor'd with the like Plenty of other Game, of all Sorts, as Cranes, Curlews, Herons, Snipes, Woodcocks, Saurers, Ox-eyes, Plover, Larks, and many other good Birds for the Table that they have not yet found a Name for. Not to mention Beavers, Otters, Musk-Rats, Minxes, and an infinite Number of other wild Creatures.

§. 27. Altho' the inner Lands want these Benefits, (which, however, no Pond or Plash is without) yet even they have the Advantage of Wild Turkeys, of an incredible Bigness, Pheasants, Partridges, Pigeons, and an Infinity of small Birds, as well as Deer, Hairs, Foxes, Raccoons, Squirrels, Possums. And upon the Frontier Plantations, they meet with Bears, Panthers, Wild-Cats, Elks, Buffaloes, and Wild Hogs, which yield Pleasure, as well as Profit to the Sports-man. And tho' some of these Names may seem frightful to the *English*, who hear not of them in their own Country; yet they are not so there; for all these Creatures ever fly from the Face of Man, doing no Damage but to the Cattle and Hogs, which the *Indians* never troubled themselves about.

Here I cannot omit a strange Rarity in the Female *Possum*, which I my self have seen. They have a false Belly, or loose Skin quite over the Belly; this never sticks to the Flesh of the Belly, but may be look'd into at all Times, after they have been concern'd in Procreation. In the Hinder-part of this, is an Overture big enough for a small Hand to pass into: Hither the young ones, after they are full hair'd, and strong enough to run
about,

about, do fly whenever any Danger appears, or when they go to rest, or suck. This they continue till they have learn'd to live without the Dam: But, what is yet stranger, the young ones are bred in this false Belly, without ever being within the true one. They are form'd at the Teat, and there they grow for several Weeks together into perfect Shape, becoming visibly larger, till at last they get Strength, Sight, and Hair; and then they drop off, and rest in this false Belly, going in and out at Pleasure. I have observed them thus fasten'd at the Teat, from the Bigness of a Flie, until they became as large as a Mouse. Neither is it any Hurt to the old one to open this Budget, and look in upon her Young.

§. 28. The *Indians* had no other Way of taking their Water or Land-Fowl, but by the Help of Bows, and Arrows: Yet, so great was their Plenty, that with this Weapon only, they kill'd what Numbers they pleas'd. And when the Water-Fowl kept far from Shore, (as in warmer Weather they sometimes did) they took their Canoes, and paddled after them.

But they had a better Way of killing the Elks, Buffaloes, Deer, and greater Game, by a Method which we call Fire-Hunting: That is, a Company of them would go together back into the Woods, any time in the Winter, when the Leaves were fallen, and so dry, that they would burn; and being come to the Place design'd, they would fire the Woods, in a Circle of five or six Miles Compass; and when they had completed the first Round, they retreated inward, each at his due Distance, and put Fire to the Leaves and Grass afresh, to accelerate the Work, which ought to be finished with the Day. This they repeat, till the Circle be so contracted, that they can see their
Game

Game herded all together in the Middle, panting and almost stifled with Heat and Smoak; for the poor Creatures being frighten'd at the Flame, keep running continually round, thinking to run from it, and dare not pass through the Fire; by which means they are brought at last into a very narrow Compass. Then the *Indians* retreat into the Center, and let fly their Arrows at them, as they pass round within the Circle; by this means, tho' they stand often quite clouded in Smoak, they rarely shoot each other. By this means they destroy all the Beasts, collected within that Circle. They make all this Slaughter chiefly for the sake of the Skins, leaving most of the Carcasses to perish in the Woods.

Father *Verbiest*, in his Description of the Emperor of *China's* Voyage into the Eastern *Tartary*, Anno 1682, gives an Account of a Way of hunting the *Tartars* have, not much unlike this; only whereas the *Indians* surround their Game with Fire, the *Tartars* do it with a great Body of armed Men, who having environ'd the Ground they design to drive, march equally inwards, which, still as the Ring lessens, brings the Men nearer each other, till at length the wild Beasts are incompassed with a living Wall.

The *Indians* have many pretty Inventions, to discover and come up to the Deer, Turkeys and other Game undiscern'd; but that being an Art known to very few *English* there, I will not be so accessary to the Destruction of their Game, as to make it public. I shall therefore only tell you, that when they go a Hunting into the Out-lands, they commonly go out for the whole Season, with their Wives and Family. At the Place where they find the most Game, they build up a convenient Number of small Cabbins, wherein they live during that Season. These Cabbins are both be-

gun, and finished in two or three Days, and after the Season is over, they make no farther Account of them.

§. 29. This, and a great deal more, was the natural Production of that Country, which the Native *Indians* enjoy'd, without the Curse of Industry, their Diversion alone, and not their Labour, supplying their Necessities. The Women and Children indeed, were so far provident, as to lay up some of the Nuts, and Fruits of the Earth, in their Season for their farther Occasions: But none of the Toils of Husbandry were exercised by this happy People; except the bare planting a little Corn, and Melons, which took up only a few Days in the Summer, the rest being wholly spent in the Pursuit of their Pleasures. And indeed all that the *English* have done, since their going thither, has been only to make some of these native Pleasures more scarce, by an inordinate and unseasonable Use of them; hardly making Improvements equivalent to that Damage.

I shall in the next Book give an Account of the *Indians* themselves, their Religion, Laws, and Customs; that so, both the Country and its primitive Inhabitants may be consider'd together, in that original State of Nature, in which the *English* found them. Afterwards I will treat of the present State of the *English* there, and the Alterations, I can't call them Improvements, they have made at this Day.

The End of the Second Book.



*Of the Indians, their Religion, Laws,
and Customs, in War and Peace.*

Of the Persons of the Indians, and their Dress,

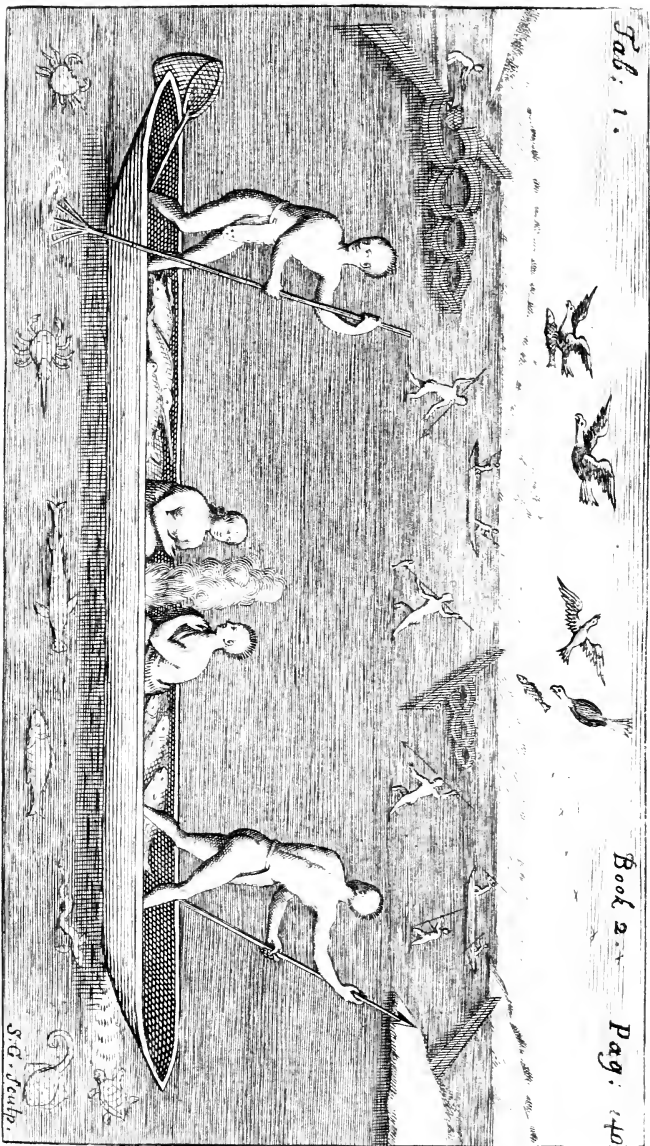
 K_2

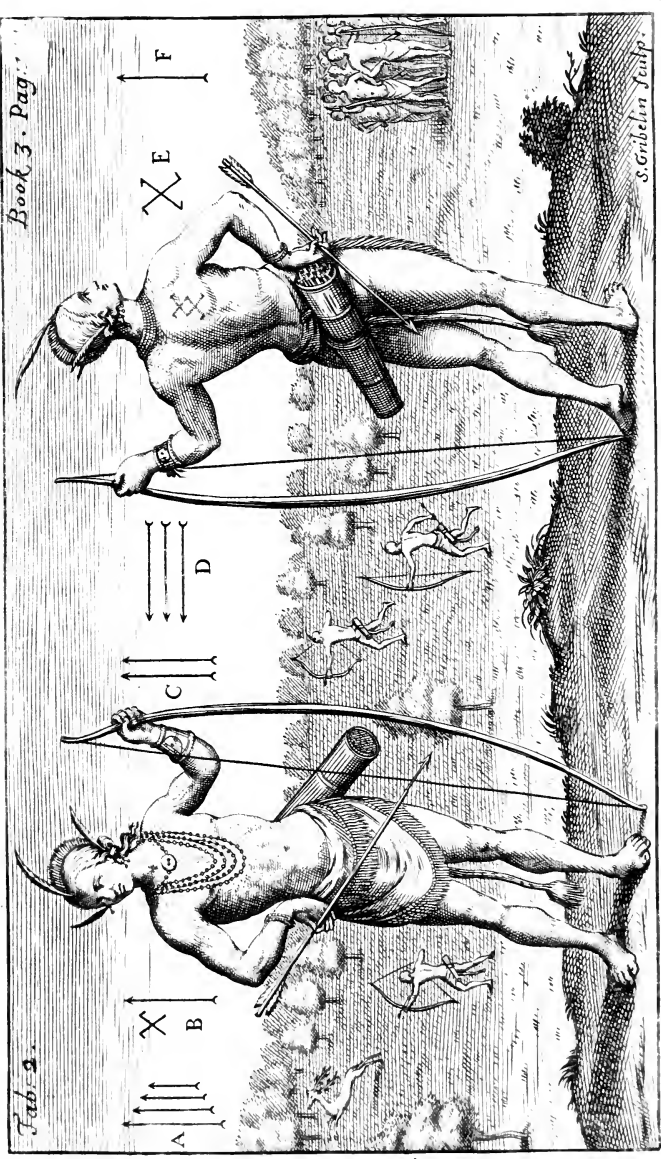
dwarfish, crooked, bandy-leg'd, or otherwise misshapen. But if they have any such Practice among them, as the *Romans* had, of exposing such Children till they died, as were weak and misshapen at their Birth, they are very shy of confessing it, and I could never yet learn that they had.

Their Colour, when they are grown up, is a Chestnut brown and tawny; but much clearer in their Infancy. Their Skin comes afterwards to harden and grow blacker, by greasing and sunning themselves. They have generally coal black Hair, and very black Eyes, which are most commonly grac'd with that sort of Squint which many of the *Jews* are observ'd to have. Their Women are generally beautiful, possessing Shape and Features agreeable enough, and wanting no Charm, but that of Education and a fair Complexion.

§. 2 The Men wear their Hair cut after several fanciful Fashions, sometimes greas'd, and sometimes painted. The great Men, or better Sort, preserve a long Lock behind for Distinction. They pull their Beards up by the Roots with Muscleshells, and both Men and Women do the same by the other Parts of their Body for Cleanliness sake. The Women wear the Hair of the Head very long, either hanging at their Backs, or brought before in a single Lock, bound up with a Fillet of Peak, or Beads; sometimes also they wear it neatly tyed up in a Knot behind. It is commonly greas'd, and, shining black, but never painted.

The People of Condition of both Sexes, wear a sort of Coronet on their Heads, from 4 to 6 Inches broad, open at the Top, and composed of Peak, or Beads, or else of both interwoven together, ther, and work'd into Figures, made by a nice Mixture of the Colours. Sometimes they wear a Wreath of died Furs; as likewise Bracelets on their Necks and Arms. The Common People go bare-headed,
only





only sticking large shining Feathers about their Heads, as their Fancies lead them.

§. 3. Their Cloaths are a large Mantle, carelessly wrapped about their Bodies, and sometimes girt close in the Middle with a Girdle. The upper part of this Mantle is drawn close upon the Shoulders, and the other hangs below their Knees. When that's thrown off, they have only for Modesty sake a Piece of Cloth, or a small Skin, tyed round their Wasse, which reaches down to the Middle of the Thigh. The common sort tie only a String round their Middle, and pass a piece of Cloth or Skin round between their Thighs, which they turn at each end over the String.

Their Shoes, when they wear any, are made of an entire piece of Buck-Skin; except when they sow a piece to the Bottom, to thicken the Soal. They are fasten'd on with running Strings, the Skin being drawn together like a Purse on the Top of the Foot, and tyed round the Ankle. The *Indian* Name of this kind of Shoe is *Moccasin*.

But because a Draught of these things will inform the Reader more at first View, than a Description in many Words, I shall present him with the following Prints drawn by the Life.

Tab. 2. Is an *Indian* Man in his Summer Dress.

The upper part of his Hair is cut short, to make a Ridge which stands up like the Comb of a Cock, the rest is either shorn off, or knotted behind his Ear. On his Head are stuck three Feathers of the Wild Turkey, Pheasant, Hawk, or such like. At his Ear is hung a fine Shell with Pearl Drops. At his Breast is a Tablet or fine Shell, smooth as polish'd Marble, which sometimes also hath etched on it, a Star, Half Moon, or other Figure, according to the Maker's Fancy. Upon his Neck, and Wrists, hang Strings of Beads, Peak and Roenoke. His Apron is made of a Deer Skin,

gashed round the Edges, which hang like Tassels or Fringe; at the upper End of the Fringe is an edging of Peak, to make it finer. His Quiver is of a thin Bark; but sometimes they make it of the Skin of a Fox, or young Wolf, with the Head hanging to it, which has a wild Sort of Terror in it; and to make it yet more warlike, they tie it on with the Tail of a Panther, Buffaloe, or such like, letting the End hang down between their Legs. The prickt Lines on his Shoulders, Breast and Legs, represent the Figures painted thereon. In his Left Hand he holds a Bow, and in his Right an Arrow. The Mark upon his Shoulder-blade, is a Distinction used by the Indians, in Travelling, to shew the Nation they are of: And perhaps is the same with that which Baron Lahontan calls the Arms and Heraldry of the Indians. Thus the several letter'd Marks, are used by several other Nations about Virginia, when they make a Journey to their Friends and Allies.

The Landskip is a natural Representation of an Indian Field.

Tab. 3. Is two Indian Men in their Winter Drefs.

Seldom any but the Elder People wore the Winter Cloaks, (which they call Match-coats) till they got a Supply of European Goods; and now most have them of one Sort or other in the cold Winter Weather. Fig. 1. wears the proper Indian Match-coat, which is made of Skins, drest with the Fur on, sowed together, and worn with the Fur inwards, having the Edges also gashed for Beauty Sake. On his Feet are Moccasins. By him stand some Indian Cabins on the Banks of the River. Fig. 2. wears the Duffield Match-coat bought of the English, on his Head is a Coronet of Peak, on his Legs are Stockings made of



fig. 2.

fig. 1.



of Duffields: *That is, they take a Length to reach from the Anckle to the Knee, so broad as to wrap round the Leg; this they sew together, letting the Edges stand out at an Inch beyond the Seam. When this is on, they garter below Knee, and fasten the lower End in the Mocassin.*

§. 4. I don't find that the *Indians* have any other Distinction in their Dress, or the Fashion of their Hair, than only what a greater Degree of Riches enables them to make; except it be their Religious Persons, who are known by the particular Cut of the Hair, and the unusual Figure of their Garments; as our Clergy are distinguish'd by their Canonical Habit.

The Habit of the *Indian Priest* is a Cloak made in the Form of a Woman's Petticoat; but instead of tying it about their Middle, they fasten the Gatherings about their Neck, and tye it upon the Right Shoulder, always keeping one Arm out to use upon Occasion. This Cloak hangs even at the Bottom, but reaches no lower than the Middle of the Thigh; but what is most particular in it is, that it is constantly made of a Skin dress'd soft, with the Pelt or Fur on the Outside, and revers'd; insomuch, that when the Cloak has been a little worn, the Hair falls down in Flakes, and looks very shagged, and frightful.

The Cut of their Hair is likewise peculiar to their Function; for 'tis all shaven close except a thin Crest, like a Cock's Comb which stands bristling up, and runs in a Semi-circle from the Forehead up along the Crown to the Nape of the Neck: They likewise have a Border of Hair over the Forehead, which by its own natural Strength, and by the Stiffning it receives from Grease and Paint, will stand out like the Peak of a Bonnet.

Tab. 4.

Tab. 4. Is a Priest and a Conjurer in their proper Habits.

The Priest's Habit is sufficiently describ'd above.

The Conjurer shaves all his Hair off, except the Crest on the Crown; upon his Ear he wears the Skin of some dark-colour'd Bird; he, as well as the Priest, is commonly grim'd with Soot or the like; to save his Modesty he hangs an Otter-skin at his Girdle, fastning the Tail between his Legs; upon his Thigh hangs his Pocket, which is fasten'd by tucking it under his Girdle, the Bottom of this is likewise fring'd with Tassils for Ornament Sake. In the Middle between them is the Huskanawpen spoken of §. 32.

§. 5. The Dress of the Women is little different from that of the Men, except in the tying of their Hair. The Women of Distinction wear deep Necklaces, Pendants and Bracelets, made of small Cylinders of the *Conque* Shell, which they call *Peak*: They likewise keep their Skin clean, and shining with Oyl, while the Men are commonly bedaub'd all over with Paint.

They are remarkable for having small round Breasts, and so firm, that they are hardly ever observ'd to hang down, even in old Women. They commonly go naked as far as the Navel downward, and upward to the Middle of the Thigh, by which Means they have the Advantage of discovering their fine Limbs, and compleat Shape.

Tab. 5. Is a Couple of young Women.

The first wearing a Coronet, Necklace, and Bracelet of Peak; the Second a Wreath of Furs on her Head, and her Hair is bound with a Fillet of Peak
and

a Muskanian pen.

3

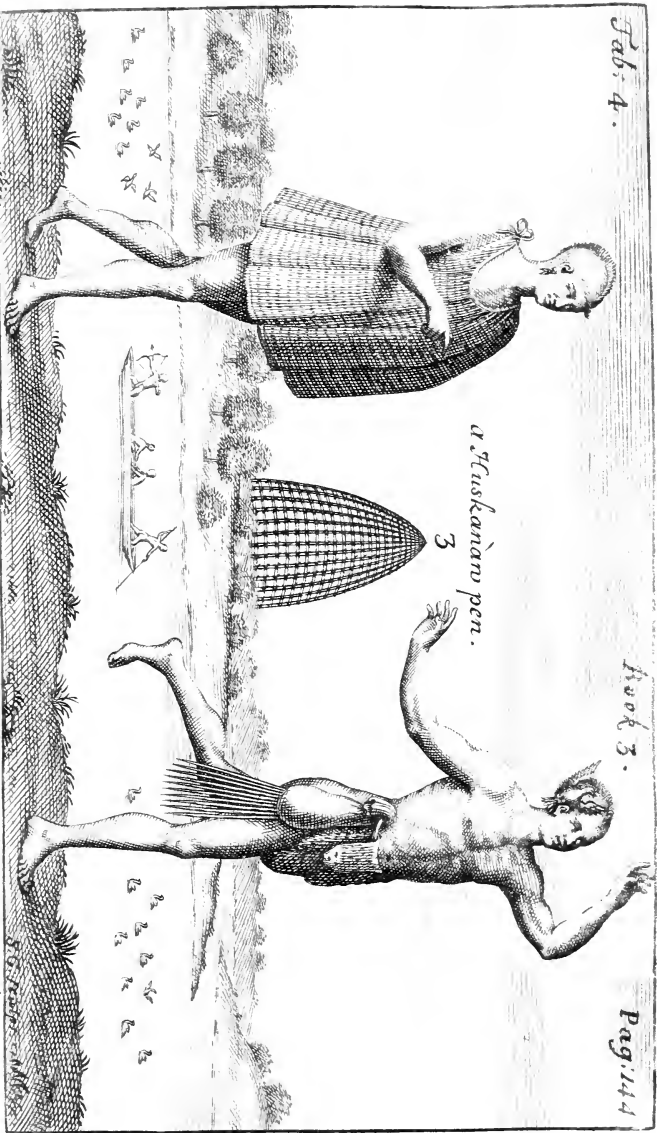


fig: 2. a Priest.

a Conjurer. fig: 1.

Tab. 5.

eng 1144

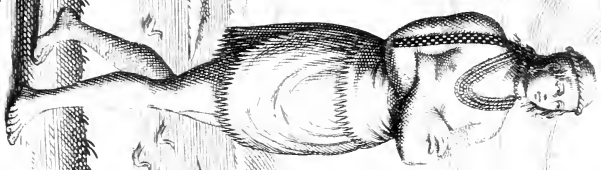


fig. 2.



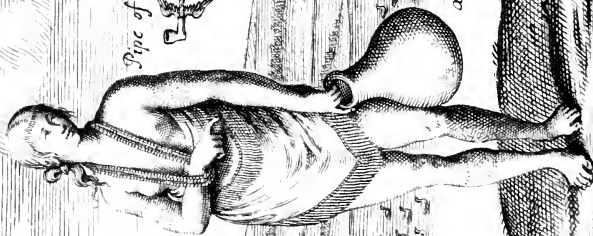
fig. 1.

S.G.

Pipe of peace w^{ch} they have seen.



Lahortians. Calumet of peace. p. 82.



a Birchen Canoe

Canoe of Bark.

and Beads. Between the two, is a Woman under a Tree, making a Basket of Silk-Grass, after their own manner.

Tab. 6. Is a Woman, and a Boy running after her.

One of her Hands rests in her Necklace of Peak, and the other holds a Gourd, in which they put Water, or other Liquid.

The Boy wears a Necklace of Runties, in his right Hand is an Indian Rattle, and in his left a roasting Ear of Corn. Round his Waste is a small String, and another brought cross thro' his Crotch, and for Decency a soft Skin is fastned before.

Runties are made of the Conch-Shell as the Peak is, only the Shape is flat and round like a Cheese, and drill'd Edge-ways.



C A H P. II.

Of the Marriages amongst the Indians, and Management of their Children.

§. 6. **T**HE *Indians* have their Solemnities of Marriage, and esteem the Vows made at that time, as most sacred and inviolable. Notwithstanding they allow both the Man and the Wife to part upon Disagreement; yet so great is the Disreputation of a Divorce, that married People, to avoid the Character of inconstant and ungenerous, very rarely let their Quarrels proceed to a Separation. However, when it does so happen, they reckon all the Ties of Matrimony dissolv'd, and each hath the Liberty of marrying another. But
Infidelity

Infidelity is accounted the most unpardonable of all Crimes in either of the Parties, as long as the Contract continues.

In these Separations, the Children go, according to the Affection of the Parent, with the one or the other; for Children are not reckoned a Charge among them, but rather Riches, according to the Blessing of the old Testament; and if they happen to differ about dividing their Children, their Method is then, to part them equally, allowing the Man the first Choice.

§. 7 Tho' the young *Indian* Women are said to prostitute their Bodies for *Wampom* Peak, Runtees, Beads, and other such like Fineries; yet I never could find any Ground for the Accusation, and believe it only to be an unjust Scandal upon them. This I know, that if ever they have a Child while they are single, it is such a Disgrace to them, that they never after get Husbands. Besides, I must do them the Justice to say, I never heard of a Child any of them had before Marriage, and the *Indians* themselves disown any such Custom; tho' they acknowledge at the same time, that the Maidens are entirely at their own Disposal, and may manage their Persons as they think fit.

§. 8. The manner of the *Indians* treating their young Children is very strange; for instead of keeping them warm, at their first Entry into the World, and wrapping them up, with I don't know how many Cloaths, according to our fond Custom; the first thing they do, is to dip the Child over Head and Ears in cold Water, and then to bind it naked to a convenient Board, having a Hole fitly plac'd for Evacuation; but they always put Cotton, Wool, Fur, or other soft things, for
the



S.G.

fig: 1.

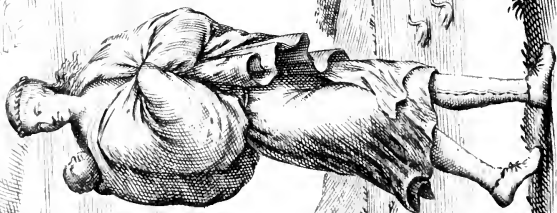


fig: 2.

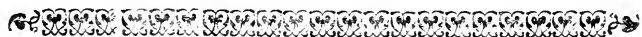


fig: 3.

the Body to rest easy on, between the Child and the Board. In this Posture they keep it several Months, till the Bones begin to harden, the Joynts to knit, and the Limbs to grow strong; and then they let it loose from the Board, suffering it to crawl about, except when they are feeding, or playing with it.

While the Child is thus at the Board, they either lay it flat on its back, or set it leaning on one End, or else hang it up by a String fasten'd to the upper End of the Board for that Purpose; the Child and Board being all this while carry'd about together. As our Women undress their Children to clean and shift their Linen, so they do theirs to wash and grease them.

The Method the Women have of carrying their Children after they are suffer'd to crawl about, is very particular; they carry them at their Backs in Summer, taking one Leg of the Child under their Arm, and the Counter-Arm of the Child in their Hand over their Shoulder; the other Leg hanging down, and the Child all the while holding fast with its other Hand; but in Winter they carry them in the hollow of their Match-coat at their Back, leaving nothing but the Child's Head out, as appears by the Figure.



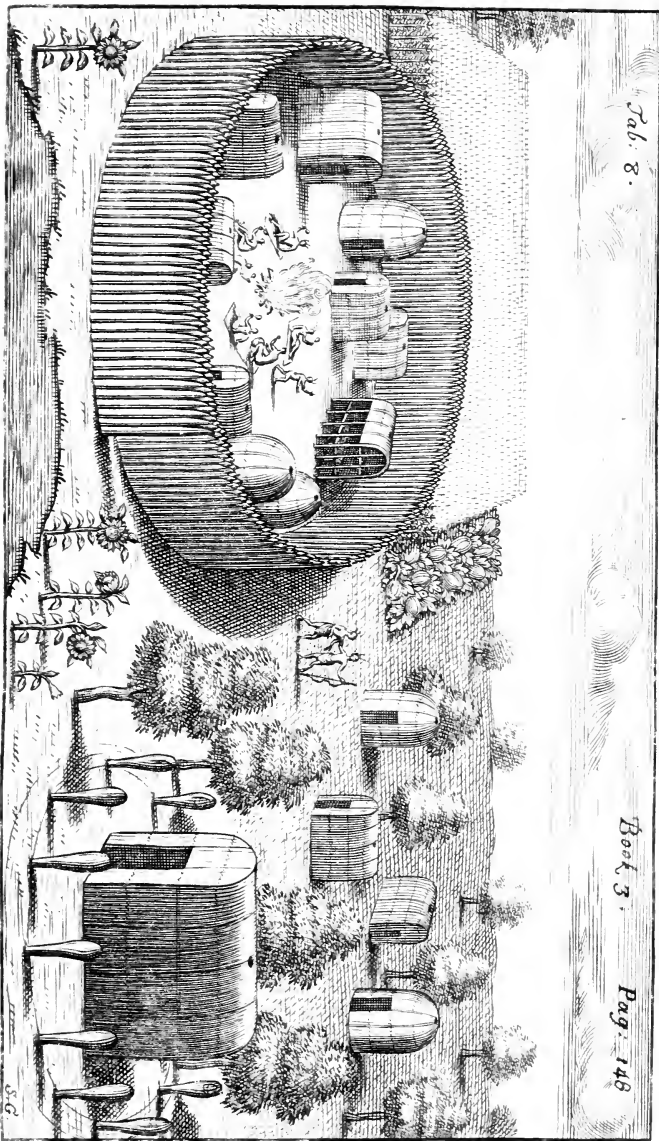
C H A P. III.

Of the Towns, Buildings and Fortifications of the Indians.

§. 2. **T**HE Method of the *Indian* Settlements is altogether by Cohabitation, in Townships, from fifty to five hundred Families in a Town, and

and each of these Towns is commonly a Kingdom. Sometimes one King has the Command of several of these Towns, when they happen to be united in his Hands, by Descent or Conquest; but in such Cases there is always a Vicegerent appointed in the dependent Town, who is at once Governor, Judge, Chancellor, and has the same Power and Authority which the King himself has in the Town where he resides. This Viceroy is oblig'd to pay his Principal some small Tribute, as an Acknowledgement of his Submission, as likewise to follow him to his Wars, whenever he is requir'd.

§. 10. The manner the *Indians* have of building their Houses, is very slight and cheap; when they would erect a *Wigwang*, which is the *Indian* Name for a House, they stick Saplings into the Ground by one End, and bend the other at the Top, fastening them together by Strings made of fibrous Roots, the Rind of Trees, or of the green Wood of the white Oak, which will rive into Thongs. The smallest Sort of these Cabbins are conical like a Beehive; but the larger are built in an oblong Form, and both are cover'd with the Bark of Trees, which will rive off into great *Flakes*. Their Windows are little Holes left open for the Passage of the Light, which in bad Weather they stop with Shutters of the same Bark, opening the Leeward Windows for Air and Light. Their Chimney, as among the true born *Irish*, is a little Hole on the Top of the House, to let out the Smoak, having no sort of Funnel, or any thing within, to confine the Smoak from ranging thro' the whole Roof of the Cabbins, if the Vent will not let it out fast enough. The Fire is always made in the Middle of the Cabbin. Their Door is a pendent Mat, when they are near home; but when they go abroad, they barricado it with great Logs of Wood set against the Mat, which



which are sufficient to keep out wild Beasts. There's never more than one Room in a House, except in some Houses of State, or Religion, where the Partition is made only by Mats, and loose Poles.

§. 11. Their Houses or Cabbins, as we call them, are by this ill Method of Building, continually smoaky, when they have Fire in them; but to ease that Inconvenience, and to make the Smoak less troublesome to their Eyes, they generally burn Pine, or Lightwood, (that is, the fat Knots of dead Pine) the Smoak of which does not offend the Eyes, but smuts the Skin exceedingly, and is perhaps another Occasion of the Darkness of their Complexion.

§. 12. Their Seats, like those in the Eastern Part of the World, are the Ground itself; and as the People of Distinction amongst those used Carpets, so Cleanliness has taught the better Sort of these, to spread Match-coats and Mats, to sit on.

They take up their Lodging in the Sides of their Cabbins upon a Couch made of Board, Sticks, or Reeds, which are rais'd from the Ground upon Forks, and cover'd with Mats or Skins. Sometimes they lye upon a Bear-Skin, or other thick Pelt drest with the Hair on, and laid upon the Ground near a Fire, covering themselves with their Match-coats. In warm Weather a single Mat is their only Bed, and another roll'd up their Pillow. In their Travels, a Grass-plat under the Covert of a shady Tree, is all the Lodging they require, and is as pleasant and refreshing to them, as a Down-Bed and fine *Holland* Sheets are to us.

§. 13. Their Fortifications consist only of a Palisado, of about ten or twelve Foot high; and when they would make themselves very safe, they

treble the Pale. They often encompass their whole Town: But for the most part only their King's Houses, and as many others as they judge sufficient to harbour all their People, when an Enemy comes against them. They never fail to secure within their Palifado, all their Religious Reliques, and the Remains of their Princes. Within this Inclosure, they likewise take Care to have a Supply of Water, and to make a Place for a Fire, which they frequently dance round with great Solemnity.



CHAP. IV.

Of their Cookery and Food.

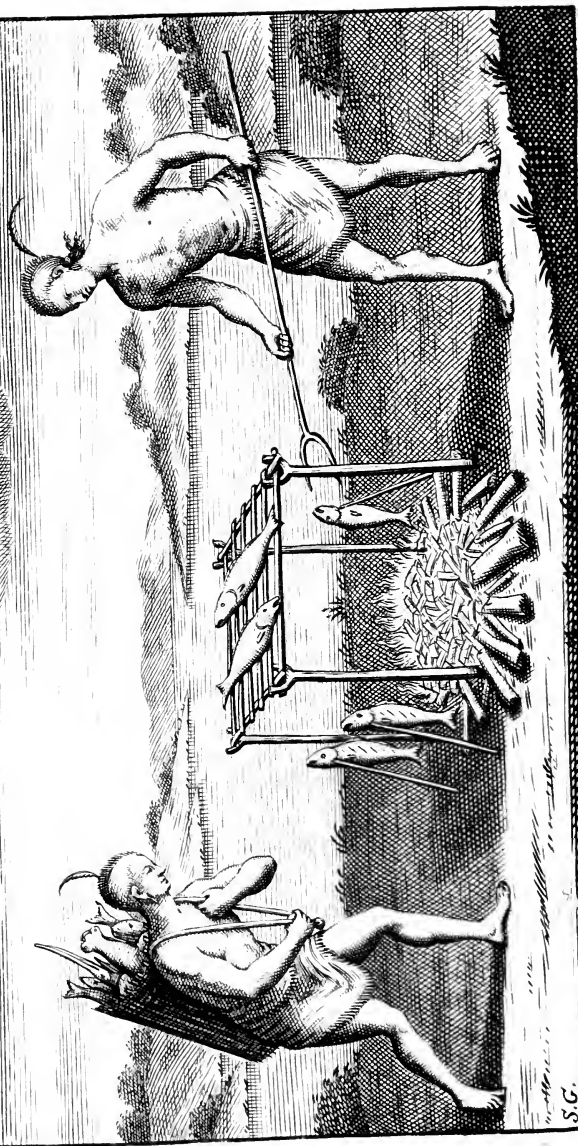
§. 14. **T**HEIR Cookery has nothing commendable in it, but that it is perform'd with little Trouble. They have no other Sauce but a good Stomach, which they seldom want. They boil, broil, or toast all the Meat they eat, and it is very common with them to boil Fish as well as Flesh with their *Homony*; this is *Indian Corn* soaked, broken in a Mortar, husked, and then boil'd in Water over a gentle Fire, for ten or twelve Hours, to the Consistence of Furmity: The Thin of this is what my Lord *Bacon* calls Cream of Maize, and highly commends for an excellent Sort of Nutriment.

They have two ways of Broiling, *viz.* one by laying the Meat it self upon the Coals, the other by laying it upon Sticks rais'd upon Forks at some Distance above the live Coals, which heats more gently, and dries up the Gravy; this they, and we also from them, call *Barbacueing*.

†

They





They skin and paunch all Sorts of Quadrupeds; they draw, and pluck their Fowl; but their Fish they dress with their Scales on, without gutting; but in eating they leave the Scales, Entrails and Bones to be thrown away. They also roast their Fish upon a hot Hearth, covering them with hot Ashes and Coals, then take them out, the Scales and Skin they strip clean off, so they eat the Flesh leaving the Bones and Entrails to be thrown away.

They never serve up different Sorts of Victuals in one Dish; as Roast and Boil'd, Fish and Flesh; but always serve them up in several Vessels.

They bake their Bread either in Cakes before the Fire, or in Loaves on a warm Hearth, covering the Loaf first with Leaves, then with warm Ashes, and afterwards with Coals over all.

Tab. 9. *Represents the Manner of their Roasting and Barbacueing, with the Form of their Baskets for common Uses, and carrying Fish.*

§. 15. Their Food is Fish and Flesh of all Sorts, and that which participates of both; as the Beaver, a small kind of Turtle, or *Tarapins*, (as we call them) and several Species of Snakes. They likewise eat Grubs, the *Nymphæ* of Wasps, some kinds of *Scarabæi*, *Cicadæ*, &c. These last are such as are sold in the Markets of *Fess*, and such as the *Arabians*, *Lybians*, *Parthians* and *Æthiopians* commonly eat; so that these are not a new Dyet, tho' a very slender one; and we are inform'd, that St. *John* was dyeted upon Locusts, and Wild-honey.

They make excellent Broth of the Head and Umbles of a Deer, which they put into the Pot all bloody. This seems to resemble the *jus nigrum* of the *Spartans*, made with the Blood and Bowels of a Hare. They eat not the Brains with the Head,
but

but dry them and reserve them to dress their Leather with.

They eat all Sorts of Peas, Beans, and other Pulse, both parched and boiled. They make their Bread of the *Indian* Corn, Wild-oats, or the Seed of the Sunflower. But when they eat their Bread, they eat it alone, and not with their Meat.

They have no Salt among them, but for seasoning use the Ashes of Hicory, Stickweed, or some other Wood or Plant, affording a Salt Ash.

They delight much to feed on Roasting-ears; that is, the *Indian* Corn, gathered green and milky, before it is grown to its full Bigness, and roasted before the Fire in the Ear. For the Sake of this Dyet, which they love exceedingly, they are very careful to procure all the several Sorts of *Indian* Corn before mentioned, by which means they contrive to prolong their Season. And indeed this is a very sweet and pleasing Food.

They have growing near their Towns, Peaches, Strawberries, Cuslawes, Melons, Pompions, Maccocks, &c. The Cuslawes and Pompions they lay by, which will keep several Months good after they are gather'd; the Peaches they save, by drying them in the Sun; they have likewise several Sorts of the *Phaseoli*.

In the Woods, they gather Chincapins, Chesnuts, Hiccories, and Walnuts. The Kernels of the Hiccories they beat in a Mortar with Water, and make a white Liquor like Milk, from whence they call our Milk *Hickory*. Hazlenuts they will not meddle with, tho' they make a shift with Acorns sometimes, and eat all the other Fruits mentioned before, but they never eat any sort of Herbs or Leaves.

They make Food of another Fruit call'd *Cuttanimmons*, the Fruit of a kind of Arum, growing in the Marshes: They are like boil'd Peas, or
Capers

Capers to look on, but of an insipid earthy Taste. Captain *Smith* in his History of *Virginia* calls them *Ocaughtanamnis*, and *Theod. de Bry* in his Translation, *Sacquenummener*.

Out of the Ground they dig Trubs, Earth-nuts, wild Onions, and a tuberous Root they call *Tuckahoe*, which while crude is of a very hot and virulent Quality: But they can manage it so, as in case of Necessity to make Bread of it, just as the *East Indians*, and those of *Egypt*, are said to do of *Colocassia*, or the *West Indians* of *Cassava*. It grows like a Flag in the miry Marshes, having Roots of the Magnitude and Taste of *Irish* Potatoes, which are easy to be dug up.

§. 16. They accustom themselves to no set Meals, but eat night and day, when they have Plenty of Provisions, or if they have got any thing that is a Rarity. They are very patient of Hunger, when by any Accident they happen to have nothing to eat; which they make more easy to themselves by girding up their Bellies, just as the wild *Arabs* are said to do, in their long Marches; by which means they are less sensible of the Impressions of Hunger.

§. 17. Among all this Variety of Food, Nature hath not taught them the Use of any other Drink than Water; which tho' they have in cool and pleasant Springs every where, yet they will not drink that, if they can get Pond-Water, or such as has been warm'd by the Sun and Weather. Baron *Labontan* tells of a sweet Juice of Maple, which the *Indians* to the Northward gave him, mingled with Water; but our *Indians* use no such Drink. For their strong Drink, they are altogether beholden to us, and are so greedy of it, that most of them will be drunk as often as they find an Opportunity;

portunity; notwithstanding which, it is a prevailing Humour among them, not to taste any strong Drink at all, unless they can get enough to make them quite drunk, and then they go as solemnly about it, as if it were part of their Religion.

§. 18. Their Fashion of sitting at Meals, is on a Mat spread on the Ground, with their Legs lying out at length before them, and the Dish between their Legs; for which reason, they seldom or never, sit more than two together at a Dish, who may with Convenience mix their Legs together, and have the Dish stand commodiously to them both; as appears by the Figure.

The Spoons which they eat with, do generally hold half a Pint; and they laugh at the *English* for using small ones, which they must be forc'd to carry so often to their Mouths, that their Arms are in Danger of being tir'd, before their Belly.

Tab. 10. Is a Man and his Wife at Dinner.

No. 1. *Is their Pot boiling with Homony and Fish in it.*

2. *Is a Bowl of Corn, which they gather up in their Fingers, to feed themselves.*

3. *The Tomahawk, which he lays by at Dinner.*

4. *His Pocket, which is likewise stript off, that he may be at full Liberty.*

5. *A Fish.*

6. *A Heap of roasting Ears.*

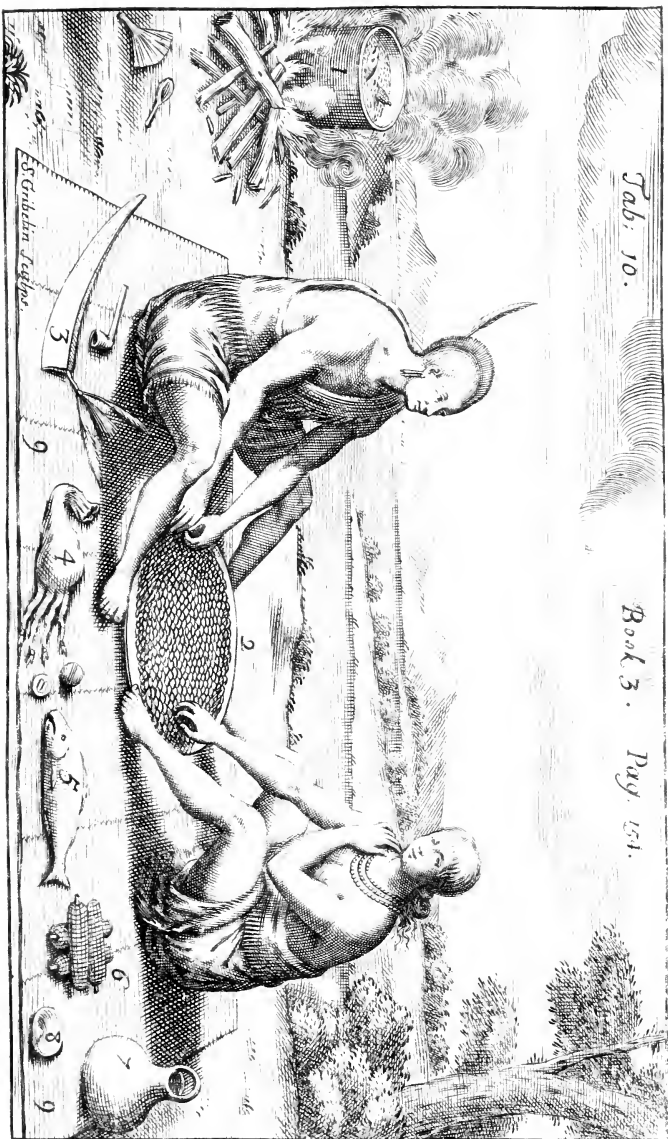
7. *The Gourd of Water.*

8. *A Cockle-Shell, which they sometimes use instead of a Spoon.*

9. *The Mat they sit on.* All other Matters in this Figure, are understood by the foregoing and following Descriptions.

Tab. 10.

Book 3. Pag. 151.





C H A P. V.

Of the Travelling, Reception, and Entertainment of the Indians.

§. 19. **T**HEIR Travels they perform altogether on Foot, the Fatigue of which they endure to Admiration. They make no other Provision for their Journey, but their Gun or Bow, to supply them with Food for many hundred Miles together. If they carry any Flesh in their Marches, they barbecue it, or rather dry it by Degrees, at some Distance, over the clear Coals of a Wood-fire; just as the *Charibees* are said, to preserve the Bodies of their Kings and great Men from Corruption. Their Sauce to this dry Meat, (if they have any besides a good Stomach) is only a little Bear's Oyl, or Oyl of Acorns; which last they force out, by boiling the Acorns in a strong Lye. Sometimes also in their Travels, each Man takes with him a Pint or Quart of *Rockahomonie*, that is, the finest *Indian* Corn, parched, and beaten to Powder. When they find their Stomach empty, (and cannot stay for the tedious Cookery of other things) they put about a spoonful of this into their Mouths, and drink a Draught of Water upon it, which stays their Stomachs, and enables them to pursue their Journey without Delay. But their main Dependence is upon the Game they kill by the Way, and the natural Fruits of the Earth. They take no Care about Lodging in these Journeys; but content themselves with the Shade of a Tree, or a little high Grass.

When they fear being discover'd, or follow'd by an Enemy in their Marches ; they, every Morning, having first agreed where they shall rendezvous at Night, disperse themselves into the Woods, and each takes a several Way, that so, the Grass or Leaves being but singly prest, may rise again, and not betray them. For the *Indians* are very artful in following a Track, even where the Impressions are not visible to other People, especially if they have any Advantage from the Looseness of the Earth, from the Stiffness of the Grass, or the stirring of the Leaves, which in the Winter Season lye very thick upon the Ground ; and likewise afterwards, if they do not happen to be burned.

When in their Travels, they meet with any Waters, which are not fordable, they make Canoes of Birch Bark, by slipping it whole off the Tree, in this manner. First, they gash the Bark quite round the Tree, at the Length they would have the Canoe off, then slit down the Length from end to end ; when that is done, they with their *Toma-bawks* easily open the Bark, and strip it whole off. Then they force it open with Sticks in the Middle, slope the Under-side of the Ends, and sow them up, which helps to keep the Belly open ; or if the Birch Trees happen to be small, they sow the Bark of two together. The Seams they dawb with Clay or Mud, and then pass over in these Canoes, by two, three, or more at a time, according as they are in Bigness. By reason of the Lightness of these Boats, they can easily carry them over Land, if they foresee that they are like to meet with any more Waters, that may impede their March ; or else they leave them at the Water-side, making no farther Account of them, except it be to repass the same Waters in their Return. See the Resemblance, Tab. 6.

§. 20. They have a peculiar way of receiving Strangers, and distinguishing whether they come as Friends or Enemies; tho' they do not understand each other's Language: And that is by a singular Method of smoaking Tobacco; in which these things are always observ'd.

1. They take a Pipe much larger and bigger than the common Tobacco Pipe, expressly made for that Purpose, with which all Towns are plentifully provided; they call them the Pipes of Peace.

2. This Pipe they always fill with Tobacco, before the Face of the Strangers, and light it.

3. The chief Man of the *Indians*, to whom the Strangers come, takes two or three Whiffs, and then hands it to the chief of the Strangers.

4. If the Stranger refuses to smoke in it, 'tis a sign of War.

5. If it be Peace, the chief of the Strangers takes a Whiff or two in the Pipe, and presents it to the next great Man of the Town they come to visit; he, after taking two or three Whiffs, gives it back to the next of the Strangers, and so on alternately, until they have past all the Persons of Note on each side, and then the Ceremony is ended.

After a little Discourse, they march together in a friendly manner into the Town, and then proceed to explain the Business upon which they came. This Method is as general a Rule among all the *Indians* of those Parts of *America*, as the Flag of Truce is among the *Europeans*. And tho' the Fashion of the Pipe differ, as well as the Ornaments of it, according to the Humour of the several Nations; yet 'tis a general Rule to make these Pipes remarkably bigger, than those for common Use, and to adorn them with beautiful Wings, and Feathers of Birds, as likewise with Peak, Beads, or

other such Foppery. Father *Lewis Henepin* gives a particular Description of one, that he took Notice of, among the *Indians*, upon the Lakes wherein he travell'd. He describes it by the Name of the *Calumet* of Peace, and his Words are these, Book I. Chap. 24.

“ This *Calumet* is the most mysterious thing in
 “ the World, among the Savages of the Conti-
 “ nent of the Northern *America*; for it is used in
 “ all their important Transactions: However, it
 “ is nothing else but a large Tobacco Pipe, made
 “ of red, black, or white Marble: The Head is
 “ finely polished, and the Quill, which is com-
 “ monly two Foot and an half long, is made of
 “ a pretty strong Reed, or Cane, adorn'd with
 “ Feathers of all Colours, interlac'd with Locks
 “ of Women's Hair. They tie it to two Wings
 “ of the most curious Birds they can find, which
 “ makes their *Calumet* not much unlike *Mercur-*
 “ *ry's* Wand, or that Staff Ambassadors did for-
 “ merly carry, when they went to treat of Peace.
 “ They sheath that Reed into the Neck of Birds
 “ they call *Huars*, which are as big as our Geese,
 “ and spotted with black and white; or else of a
 “ Sort of Ducks, which make their Nests upon
 “ Trees, tho' the Water be their ordinary Ele-
 “ ment; and whose Feathers be of many different
 “ Colours. However, every Nation adorns their
 “ *Calumet* as they think fit, according to their
 “ own Genius, and the Birds they have in their
 “ Country.

“ Such a Pipe is a Pass and safe Conduct among
 “ all the Allies of the Nation who has given it.
 “ And in all Embassies, the Ambassador carries
 “ that *Calumet*, as the Symbol of Peace, which is
 “ always respected: For the Savages are general-
 “ ly persuaded, that a great Misfortune would be-
 “ fall

“ fall them, if they violated the public Faith of the
 “ *Calumet*.

“ All their Enterprizes, Declarations of War,
 “ or Conclusions of Peace, as well as all the rest of
 “ their Ceremonies, are seal'd, (if I may be per-
 “ mitted to say so) with this *Calumet*: They fill
 “ that Pipe with the best Tobacco they have, and
 “ then present it to those, with whom they have
 “ concluded any great Affair, and smoke out of
 “ the same after them.

In Tab. 6. is seen the *Calumet* of Peace, drawn
 by *Labontan*, and one of the Sort which I have
 seen.

§. 21. They have a remarkable way of entertain-
 ing all Strangers of Condition, which is perform'd
 after the following manner. First, the King or
 Queen, with a Guard and a great Retinue, march
 out of the Town, a quarter or half a Mile, and
 carry Mats for their Accommodation; when they
 meet the Strangers, they invite them to sit down
 upon those Mats. Then they pass the Ceremony
 of the Pipe, and afterwards, having spent about
 half an Hour in grave Discourse, they get up all
 together, and march into the Town. Here the
 first Compliment is to wash the courteous Travel-
 ler's Feet; then he is treated at a plentiful Enter-
 tainment, serv'd up by a great Number of Atten-
 dants. After which he is diverted with antique
Indian Dances, perform'd both by Men and Wo-
 men, and accompanied with great Variety of wild
 Musick. At this Rate he is regal'd till Bed-time;
 when a Brace of young beautiful Virgins are
 chosen, to wait upon him that Night, for his par-
 ticular Refreshment. These Damsels are to un-
 dress this happy Gentleman, and as soon as he is
 in Bed, they gently lay themselves down by him,
 one on one side of him, and the other on the other.

They esteem it a Breach of Hospitality, not to submit to every thing he desires of them. This kind Ceremony is us'd only to Men of great Distinction: And the young Women are so far from suffering in their Reputation for this Civility, that they are envied for it by all the other Girls, as having had the greatest Honour done them in the World.

After this manner perhaps many of the Heroes were begotten in old time, who boasted themselves to be the Sons of some way-faring God.



CHAP. VI.

Of the Learning, and Languages of the Indians.

§. 22. **T**Hese *Indians* have no sort of Letters to express their words by; but when they would communicate any thing, that cannot be deliver'd by Message, they do it by a sort of Hieroglyphick, or Representation of Birds, Beasts or other things, shewing their different meaning, by the various Forms describ'd, and by the different Position of the Figures.

Baron *Lakontan* in his second Volume of new Voyages, has two extraordinary Chapters, concerning the Heraldry and Hieroglyphicks of the *Indians*: but I having had no opportunity of conversing with our *Indians*, since that Book came to my hands, nor having ever suspected them to be acquainted with Heraldry, I am not able to say any thing upon that Subject.

The *Indians* when they travel ever so small a way, being much embroil'd in War one with another, use several Marks painted upon their Shoulders, to distinguish themselves by, and shew what Nation

Nation they are of. The usual Mark is one, two, or three Arrows; one Nation paints these Arrows upwards, another downwards, a third sideways, and others again use other Distinctions, as in Tab. 2. from whence it comes to pass, that the *Virginia* Assembly took up the humour, of making Badges of Silver, Copper or Brass, of which they gave a sufficient number, to each Nation in Amity with the *English*, and then made a Law, that the *Indians* should not travel among the *English* Plantations, without one of these Badges in their Company to shew that they are Friends. And this is all the Heraldry, that I know is practis'd among the *Indians*.

§. 23. Their Languages differ very much, as antiently in the several parts of *Britain*; so that Nations at a moderate distance do not understand one another. However, they have a sort of general Language, like what *Lahontan* calls the *Algonkine*, which is understood by the chief Men of many Nations, as *Latin* is in most parts of *Europe*, and *Lingua Franca* quite thro' the *Levant*.

The general Language here us'd, is said to be that of the *Occaneeches*, tho' they have been but a small Nation, ever since those parts were known to the *English*: but in what this Language may differ from that of the *Algonkines*, I am not able to determine.



C H A P. VII.

Of the War, and Peace of the Indians.

§. 24. **W**HEN they are about to undertake any War, or other solemn Enterprize, the King summons a Convention of his Great men, to assist at a Grand Council, which in their Language is call'd a *Matchacomoco*. At these Assemblies 'tis the custom, especially when a War is expected, for the young men to paint themselves irregularly with black, red, white, and several other motly Colours, making one half of their Face red, (for Instance) and the other half black or white, with great Circles of a different Hue round their Eyes; with monstrous Mustachoes, and a thousand fantastical Figures, all over the rest of their Body; and to make themselves appear yet more ugly and frightful, they strow Feathers, Down, or the Hair of Beasts, upon the Paint, while it is still moist, and capable of making those light Substances stick fast on: When they are thus formidably equipt, they rush into the *Matchacomoco*, and instantly begin some very Grotesque Dance, holding their Arrows, or *Tomahawks* in their Hands, and all the while singing the antient Glories of their Nation, and especially of their own Families; threatning and making Signs with their *Tomahawk*, what a dreadful Havock they intend to make amongst their Enemies.

Notwithstanding these terrible Airs they give themselves, they are very timorous when they come to Action, and rarely perform any open or bold Feats; but the Execution they do, is chiefly by Surprise and Ambuscade.

§. 25. The Fearfulness of their Nature, makes them very jealous and implacable. Hence it is, that when they get a Victory, they destroy Man, Woman, and Child, to prevent all future Resentments.

§. 26. I can't think it any thing but their Jealousy, that makes them exclude the Lineal Issue from succeeding immediately to the Crown: Thus if a King have several Legitimate Children, the Crown does not descend in a direct Line to his Children, but to his Brother by the same Mother, if he have any, and for want of such, to the Children of his eldest Sister, always respecting the Descent by the Female, as the surer side. But the Crown goes to the Male Heir (if any be) in equal Degree, and for want of such, to the Female, preferably to any Male that is more distant.

§. 27. As in the Beginning of a War, they have Assemblies for Consultation, so upon any Victory, or other great Success, they have public Meetings again, for Processions and Triumphs. I never saw one of these, but have heard that they are accompanied with all the Marks of a wild and extravagant Joy.

Captain *Smith* gives the Particulars of one that was made upon his being taken Prisoner, and carried to their Town. These are his Words, *Pag.* 47.

“ Drawing themselves all in File, the King in
 “ the midst had all their Pieces and Swords born
 “ before him. Captain *Smith* was led after him
 “ by three great Savages, holding him fast by
 “ each Arm; and on each side six went in File,
 “ with their Arrows nock'd; but arriving at the
 “ Town (which was but thirty or forty Hunting-
 “ houses made of Mats, which they remove as
 “ often as they please, as we our Tents) all the
 “ Women and Children staring to behold him; the
 Soldiers

“ Soldiers first all in the File perform’d the
 “ Form of a *Biffom* as well as could be ; and on
 “ each Flank Officers as Serjeants to see them
 “ keep their Order. A good time they continued
 “ this Exercife, and then caft themselves in a Ring,
 “ dancing in fuch feveral Poftures, and finging and
 “ yelling out fuch hellifh Notes and Screeches ;
 “ being ftangely painted, every one his Quiver of
 “ Arrows, and at his Back a Club, on his Arm a
 “ Fox or an Otter’s Skin, or fome fuch Matter for
 “ his *Vambrace* ; their Heads and Shoulders painted
 “ red with Oil and *Puccoons* mingled together,
 “ which Scarlet-like Colour made an exceeding
 “ handfom Shew ; his Bow in his Hand, and the
 “ Skin of a Bird with the Wings abroad dried, ty’d
 “ on his Head ; a piece of Copper, a white Shell,
 “ a long Feather, with a fmall Rattle growing at
 “ the Tails of their Snakes, ty’d to it, or fome fuch
 “ like Toy. All this while *Smith* and the King
 “ ftood in the midft, guarded as before is faid, and
 “ after three Dances they all departed.

I fuppofe here is fomething omitted, and that
 the Conjurer fhould have been introduc’d in his
 proper Drefs, as the fequel of the Story feems to
 mean.

§. 28. They ufe formal Embaffies for treating,
 and very ceremonious Ways in concluding of
 Peace, or elfe fome other memorable Action, fuch
 as burying a *Tomahawk*, and raifing an heap of
 Stones thereon, as the *Hebrews* were wont to do ;
 or of planting a Tree, in Token that all Enmity
 is buried with the *Tomahawk*, that all the Defola-
 tions of War are at an End, and that Friendfhip
 fhall flourish among them like a Tree.

C H A P. VIII.

Concerning the Religion, Worship, and Superstitious Customs of the Indians.

§. 29. **I** Don't pretend to have div'd into all the Myſteries of the *Indian* Religion, nor have I had ſuch Opportunities of learning them, as Father *Henepin* and Baron *Lahontan* had, by living much among the *Indians* in their Towns; and becauſe my Rule is, to ſay nothing, but what I know to be Truth, I ſhall be very brief upon this Head.

In the Writings of thoſe two Gentlemen, I cannot but obſerve direct Contradictions, altho' they travel'd the ſame Country, and the Accounts they pretend to give, are of the ſame *Indians*. One makes them have very refin'd Notions of a Deity, and the other don't allow them ſo much as the Name of a God. For which Reaſon, I think my ſelf oblig'd ſincerely to deliver what I can warrant to be true upon my own Knowledge; it being neither my Intereſt, nor any Part of my Vanity, to impoſe upon the World.

I have been at ſeveral of the *Indian* Towns, and converſed with ſome of the moſt ſenſible of them in *Virginia*; but I could learn little from them, it being reckon'd Sacrilege, to divulge the Principles of their Religion. However the following Adventure diſcover'd ſomething of it. As I was ranging the Woods, with ſome other Friends, we fell upon their *Quioccoſan*, (which is their Houſe of religious Worſhip) at a time, when the whole Town were gathered together in another Place,

to

to consult about the Bounds of the Land given them by the *English*.

Thus finding our selves Masters of so fair an Opportunity, (because we knew the *Indians* were engaged,) we resolv'd to make use of it, and to examine their *Quioccasau*, the Inside of which they never suffer any *English* Men to see ; and having removed about fourteen Logs from the Door, with which it was barricado'd, we went in, and at first found nothing but naked Walls, and a Fire-place in the Middle. This House was about eighteen Foot wide, and thirty Foot long, built after the Manner of their other Cabbins, but larger, with a Hole in the Middle of the Roof, to vent the Smoke, the Door being at one End : Round about the House, at some Distance from it, were set up Posts, with Faces carved on them, and painted. We did not observe any Window or Passage for the Light, except the Door, and the vent of the Chimney. At last, we observ'd, that at the farther End, about ten Foot of the Room was cut off by a Partition of very close Mats ; and it was dismal dark behind that Partition. We were at first scrupulous to enter this obscure Place, but at last we ventur'd, and groping about, we felt some Posts in the Middle ; then reaching our Hands up those Posts, we found large Shelves, and upon these Shelves three Mats, each of which was roll'd up, and sow'd fast. These we handed down to the Light, and to save time in unlacing the Seams, we made use of a Knife, and ripp'd them, without doing any Damage to the Mats. In one of these we found some vast Bones, which we judg'd to be the Bones of Men, particularly we measur'd one Thigh-bone, and found it two Foot nine Inches long : In another Mat, we found some *Indian Tomahawks* finely grav'd, and painted. These resembled the wooden Faulchion
us'd

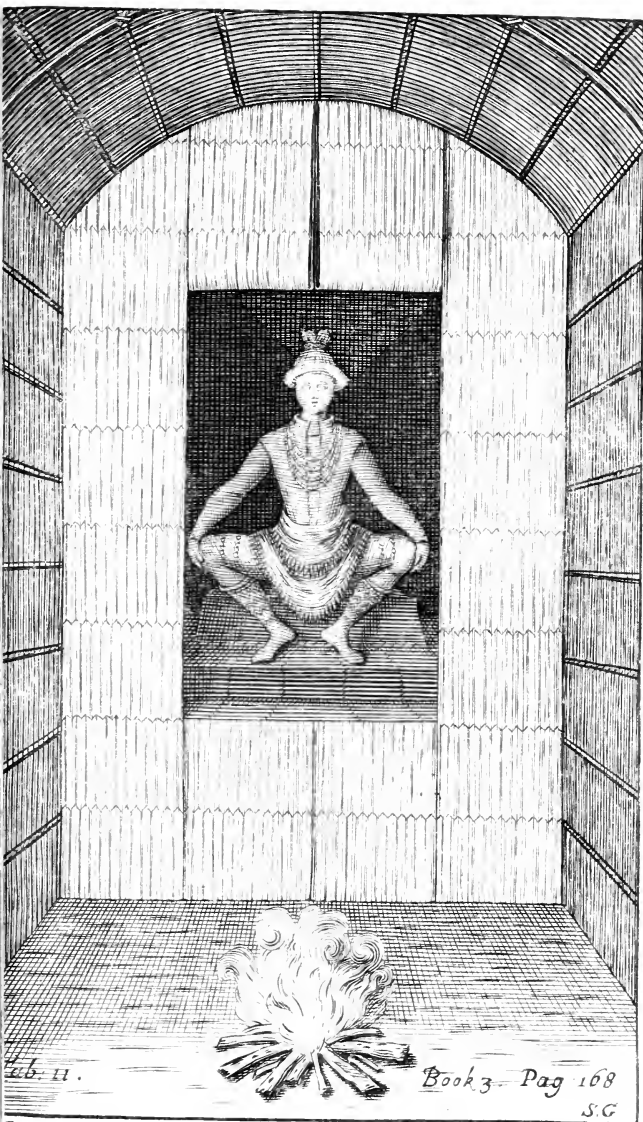
us'd by the Prize-fighters in *England*, except that they have no Guard to save the Fingers. They were made of a rough heavy Wood, and the shape of them is represented in the Tab. 10. N°. 3. Among these *Tomahawks* was the largest that ever I saw; there was fasten'd to it a wild Turkey's Beard painted red, and two of the longest Feathers of his Wings hung dangling at it, by a String of about six Inches long, ty'd to the end of the *Tomahawk*. In the third Mat there was something, which we took to be their Idol, tho' of an underling Sort, and wanted putting together. The Pieces were these, first a Board three Foot and a half long, with one Indenture at the upper End, like a Fork, to fasten the Head upon; from thence half Way down, were half Hoops nail'd to the Edges of the Board, at about four Inches distance, which were bow'd out, to represent the Breast and Belly; on the lower Half was another Board of half the Length of the other, fasten'd to it by Joints or Pieces of Wood, which being set on each side, stood out about 14 Inches from the Body, and half as high; we suppos'd the Use of these to be for the bowing out of the Knees, when the Image was set up. There were packt up with these Things, red and blue Pieces of Cotton Cloath, Rolls made up for Arms, Thighs and Legs, bent to at the Knees, as is represented in the Figure of their Idol, which was taken by an exact Drawer in the first Discovery of the Country. It would be difficult to see one of these Images at this Day, because the *Indians* are extreme shy of exposing them. We put the Cloaths upon the Hoops for the Body, and fasten'd on the Arms and Legs, to have a view of the Representation: But the Head and rich Bracelets, which it is usually adorn'd with, were not there, or at least we did not find them. We had not leisure to make a very narrow Search;

for having spent about an Hour in this Enquiry, we fear'd the Business of the *Indians* might be near over; and that if we staid longer, we might be caught offering an Affront to their Superstition; for this Reason we wrapt up those holy Materials in their several Mats again, and laid them on the Shelf, where we found them. This Image when drest up, might look very venerable in that dark Place; where 'tis not possible to see it, but by the glimmering Light, that is let in by lifting up a piece of the Matting, which we observ'd to be conveniently hung for that Purpose; for when the light of the Door and Chimney glance in several Directions, upon the Image, thro' that little Passage, it must needs make a strange Representation, which those poor People are taught to worship with a devout Ignorance. There are other things that contribute towards carrying on this Imposture; first the chief Conjuror enters within the Partition in the dark, and may undiscern'd move the Image as he pleases: *Secondly*, a Priest of Authority stands in the Room with the People, to keep them from being too inquisitive, under the Penalty of the Deity's Displeasure, and his own Censure.

Their Idol bears a several Name in every Nation, as *Okee*, *Quioccos*, *Kiwasa*. They do not look upon it, as one single Being, but reckon there are many of the same Nature; they likewise believe, that there are tutelar Deities in every Town.

Tab. II. Their Idol in his Tabernacle.

The dark Edging shews the Sides and Roof of the House, which consists of Saplings and Bark. The paler Edging shews the Mats, by which they make a Partition, of about ten Foot, at the end of the House, for the Idol's abode. The Idol is set upon his Seat of Mats,



Tab. II.

Book 3. Pag 168
S.G

Dol call'd. OKÈÈ, QUIÓCCOS, or KIWASÀ.

Mats, within a dark Recess, above the People's Heads, and the Curtain is drawn up before him.

§. 30. Father *Henepin* in his Continuation, Pag. 60. will not allow that the *Indians* have any belief of a Deity, nor that they are capable of the Arguments, and Reasonings that are common to the rest of Mankind. He farther says, that they have not any outward Ceremony to denote their Worship of a Deity, nor have any Word to express God by : That there's no Sacrifice, Priest, Temple, or any other Token of Religion among them. Baron *Labontan*, on the other hand, makes them have such refin'd Notions, as seem almost to confute his own Belief of Christianity.

The first I cannot believe, tho' written by the Pen of that pious Father ; because, to my own Knowledge, all the *Indians* in these Parts are a superstitious and idolatrous People ; and because all other Authors, who have written of the *American Indians*, are against him. As to the other Account of the just Thoughts the *Indians* have of Religion, I must humbly intreat the Baron's pardon ; because I am very sure, they have some unworthy Conceptions of God, and another World. Therefore what that Gentleman tells the Public concerning them, is rather to shew his own Opinions, than those of the *Indians*.

Once in my Travels, in very cold Weather, I met at an *English* Man's House with an *Indian*, of whom an extraordinary Character had been given me, for his Ingenuity and Understanding. When I saw he had no other *Indian* with him, I thought I might be the more free ; and therefore I made much of him, seating him close by a large Fire, and giving him plenty of strong Cyder, which I hop'd would make him good Company, and open-hearted. After I found him well warm'd (for un-

less they be surprized some way or other, they will not talk freely of their Religion) I ask'd him concerning their God, and what their Notions of him were? He freely told me, they believ'd God was universally beneficent, that his Dwelling was in the Heavens above, and that the Influences of his Goodness reach'd to the Earth beneath: That he was incomprehensible in his Excellence, and enjoy'd all possible Felicity: That his Duration was eternal, his Perfection boundless, and that he possesses everlasting Indolence and Ease. I told him, I had heard that they worshiped the Devil, and asked why they did not rather worship God, whom they had so high an Opinion of, and who would give them all good Things, and protect them from any Mischief that the Devil could do them? To this his answer was; that, 'tis true, God is the Giver of all good Things, but they flow naturally and promiscuously from him; that they are shower'd down upon all Men indifferently without Distinction; that God does not trouble himself, with the impertinent Affairs of Men, nor is concern'd at what they do; but leaves them to make the most of their free Will, and to secure as many as they can of the good Things that flow from him: That therefore it was to no purpose, either to fear, or worship him: But on the contrary, if they did not pacify the evil Spirit, and make him propitious, he would take away, or spoil all those good Things that God had given, and ruin their Health, their Peace, and their Plenty, by sending War, Plague, and Famine among them; for, said he, this evil Spirit is always busying himself with our Affairs, and frequently visiting us, being present in the Air, in the Thunder, and in the Storms. He told me farther, that he expected Adoration and Sacrifice from them, on pain of his Displeasure; and that therefore they thought it

con-

convenient to make their Court to him. I then asked him concerning the Image, which they worship in their *Quioccasan*; and assur'd him, that it was a dead insensible Log, equipt with a Bundle of Clouts, a meer helpless Thing made by Men, that could neither hear, see, nor speak; and that such a stupid thing could no ways hurt, or help them. To this he answer'd very unwillingly, and with much Hesitation; however, he at last deliver'd himself in these broken and imperfect Sentences; *It is the Priests — they make the People believe, and —* Here he paus'd a little, and then repeated to me, that *it was the Priests —* and then gave me hopes that he would have said something more; but a Qualm cross'd his Conscience, and hinder'd him from making any farther Confession.

§. 31. The Priests and Conjurers have a great Sway in every Nation. Their Words are looked upon as Oracles, and consequently are of great Weight among the common People. They perform their Adorations and Conjurations, in the general Language before spoken of, as the Catholics of all Nations do their Mass in the *Latin*. They teach, that the Souls of Men survive their Bodies, and that those who have done well here, enjoy most transporting Pleasures in their *Elizium* hereafter; that this *Elizium* is stor'd with the highest Perfection of all their earthly Pleasures; namely, with plenty of all Sorts of Game, for Hunting, Fishing, and Fowling; that it is blest with the most charming Women, which enjoy an eternal Bloom, and have an universal Desire to please: That it is deliver'd from Excesses of Cold or Heat, and flourishes with an everlasting Spring. But that, on the contrary, those who are wicked, and live scandalously here, are condemn'd to a filthy stinking Lake after Death, that continually burns with Flames, that

never extinguish; where they are persecuted and tormented Day and Night, with Furies in the Shape of old Women.

They use many Divinations and Inchantments, and frequently offer burnt Sacrifice to the evil Spirit. The People annually present their first Fruits of every Season and Kind, namely, of Birds, Beasts, Fish, Fruits, Plants, Roots, and of all other Things, which they esteem either of Profit or Pleasure to themselves. They repeat their Offerings, as frequently as they have great Successes in their Wars, or their Fishing, Fowling or Hunting.

Captain *Smith* describes the particular Manner of a Conjuraton that was made about him, while he was a Prisoner among the *Indians*, at the *Pamaunkie* Town, in the first Settlement of the Country; and after that, I'll tell you of another of a more modern Date, which I had from a very good Hand. *Smith's* Words are these.

“ Early in the Morning a great Fire was made
 “ in a long House, and a Mat spread on the one
 “ side and on the other : On the one they caus'd
 “ him to sit, and all the Guard went out of the
 “ House; and presently there came skipping in a
 “ great grim Fellow, all painted over with Coal
 “ mingled with Oil, and many Snakes and Wea-
 “ sel-Skins stufft with Moss, and all their Tails
 “ ty'd together, so as they met in the Crown of
 “ his Head, like a Tossil, and round about the
 “ Tossil was a Coronet of Feathers, the Skins
 “ hanging round about his Head, Back, and Shoul-
 “ ders, and in a Manner covering his Face; with
 “ a hellish Voice, and a Rattle in his Hand, with
 “ most strange Gestures and Postures he began his
 “ Invocation, and environ'd the Fire with a Circle
 “ of Meal; which done, three much such like De-
 “ vils came rushing in with the like antick Tricks,
 “ painted

“ painted half black, half red; but all their Eyes
 “ were painted white, and some great Strokes,
 “ like Mustachoes, along their Cheeks. Round
 “ about him these Fiends danced a pretty while;
 “ and then came in three more as ugly as the rest,
 “ with red Eyes and white Strokes over their
 “ black Faces: At last they all sat down right
 “ against him, three of them on one Hand of the
 “ chief Priest, and three on the other. Then all
 “ of them with their Rattles began a Song; which
 “ ended, the chief Priest laid down five Wheat
 “ Corns; then straining his Arms and Hands with
 “ such Violence that he sweat, and his Veins
 “ swell’d, he began a short Oration: At the Con-
 “ clusion they all gave a short Groan, and then
 “ laid down three Grains more; after that, began
 “ their Song again, and then another Oration,
 “ ever laying down so many Corns as before, till
 “ they had twice encircled the Fire. That done,
 “ they took a Bunch of little Sticks prepar’d for
 “ that purpose, continuing still their Devotion;
 “ and at the end of every Song and Oration they
 “ laid down a Stick betwixt the Divisions of Corn.
 “ Till Night neither he nor they did eat or
 “ drink, and then they feasted merrily, with the
 “ Provisions they could make. Three Days they
 “ used this Ceremony, the meaning whereof, they
 “ told him, was to know, if he intended them
 “ well or no. The Circle of Meal signified their
 “ Country, the Circles of Corn the Bounds of
 “ the Sea, and the Sticks his Country. They
 “ imagined the World to be flat and round like a
 “ Trencher, and they in the Midst.

Thus far is *Smith's* Story of Conjuraton con-
 cerning himself, but when he says they encircled
 the Fire with Wheat, I am apt to believe, he
 means their *Indian* Corn; which some, contrary

to the Custom of the rest of Mankind, will still call by the Name of *Indian* Wheat.

The latter Story of Conjurat[i]on is this. Some few Years ago, there happen'd a very dry Time, towards the Heads of the Rivers, and especially on the upper Parts of *James* River, where Colonel *Byrd* had several Quarters of Negroes. This Gentleman has been for a long time extremely respected, and fear'd by all the *Indians* round about, who, without knowing the Name of any Governor, have ever been kept in Order by him. During this Drought, an *Indian* well known to one of the Colonel's Overseers, came to him, and ask'd if his Tobacco was not like to be spoil'd? The Overseer answer'd, yes, if they had not Rain very suddenly. The *Indian*, who pretended great Kindness for his Master, told the Overseer, if he would promise to give him two Bottles of Rum, he would bring him Rain enough. The Overseer did not believe any Thing of the Matter, not seeing at that Time the least Appearance of Rain, nor so much as a Cloud in the Sky; however, he promis'd to give him the Rum, when his Master came thither, if he would be as good as his word: Upon this the *Indian* went immediately a *Pauwawing*, as they call it; and in about half an Hour, there came up a black Cloud into the Sky, that shower'd down Rain enough upon this Gentleman's Corn and Tobacco, but none at all upon any of the Neighbours, except a few Drops of the Skirts of the Shower. The *Indian* for that time went away, without returning to the Overseer again, till he heard of his Master's Arrival at the *Falls*, and then he came to him, and demanded the two Bottles of Rum. The Colonel at first seem'd to know nothing of the Matter, and ask'd the *Indian*, for what Reason he made that Demand? (Altho' his Overseer had been so overjoy'd at what had happen'd, that he

could not rest till he had taken a Horse and rode near forty Miles to tell his Master the Story.) The *Indian* answer'd with some Concern, that he hop'd the Overseer had let him know the Service he had done him, by bringing a Shower of Rain to save his Crop. At this the Colonel, not being apt to believe such Stories, smil'd; and told him, he was a Cheat, and had seen the Cloud a coming, otherwise he could neither have brought the Rain, nor so much as foretold it. The *Indian* at this seeming much troubled, reply'd; why then had not such a one, and such a one, (naming the next Neighbours) Rain, as well as your Overseer? for they lost their Crops; but I lov'd you, and therefore I sav'd yours. The Colonel made sport with him a little while, but in the End order'd him the two Bottles of Rum, letting him understand however, that it was a free Gift, and not the Consequence of any Bargain with his Overseer.

§. 32. The *Indians* have their Altars and Places of Sacrifice. Some say, they now and then sacrifice young Children: But they deny it, and assure us, that when they withdraw their Children, it is not to sacrifice them, but to consecrate them to the Service of their God. *Smith* tells of one of these Sacrifices in his time, from the Testimony of some People, who had been Eye-witnesses. His Words are these.

“ Fifteen of the properest young Boys, between
 “ ten and fifteen Years of Age, they painted white;
 “ having brought them forth, the People spent
 “ the Forenoon in Dancing and Singing about
 “ them with Rattles. In the Afternoon they put
 “ these Children to the Root of a Tree. By them
 “ all the Men stood in a Guard, every one having
 “ a *Bastinado* in his Hand, made of Reeds bound
 “ together; they made a Lane between them all
 “ along, through which there were appointed five
 “ young

“ young Men to fetch these Children: So every
 “ one of the Five went through the Guard, to fetch
 “ a Child each after other by Turns; the Guard
 “ fiercely beating them with their *Bastinadoes*, and
 “ they patiently enduring and receiving all, defend-
 “ ing the Children with their naked Bodies from
 “ the unmerciful Blows, that pay them soundly,
 “ though the Children escape. All this while the
 “ Women weep and cry out very passionately,
 “ providing Mats, Skins, Moss, and dry Wood,
 “ as things fitting for their Childrens Funeral. Af-
 “ ter the Children were thus past the Guard, the
 “ Guards tore down the Tree, Branches and Boughs
 “ with such violence, that they rent the Body,
 “ made Wreaths for their Heads, and bedeck’d
 “ their Hair with the Leaves.

“ What else was done with the Children was
 “ not seen; but they were all cast on a heap in a
 “ Valley as dead, where they made a great Feast
 “ for all the Company.

“ The *Werowance* being demanded the meaning
 “ of this Sacrifice, answer’d, that the Children
 “ were not dead, but that the *Okee* or Devil did
 “ suck the Blood from the left Breast of those,
 “ who chanc’d to be his by Lot, till they were
 “ dead; but the rest were kept in the Wilderness
 “ by the young Men, till nine Months were ex-
 “ pired, during which time they must not converse
 “ with any; and of these were made their Priests
 “ and Conjurers.

How far Captain *Smith* might be misinform’d
 in this Account, I can’t say, or whether their *Okee’s*
 sucking the Breast, be only a delusion or pretence
 of the Physician, (or Priest, who is always a Phy-
 sician) to prevent all Reflection on his Skill, when
 any happen’d to die under his Discipline. This I
 choose rather to believe, than those religious Ro-
 mances concerning their *Okee*. For I take this
 Story

Story of *Smith's* to be only an Example of *Huskanawing*, which being a Ceremony then altogether unknown to him, he might easily mistake some of the Circumstances of it.

The Solemnity of *Huskanawing* is commonly practis'd once every fourteen or sixteen Years, or oftner, as their young Men happen to grow up. It is an Institution or Discipline which all young Men must pass, before they can be admitted to be of the Number of the great Men, Officers, or *Cockarouses* of the Nation; whereas by Captain *Smith's* Relation, they were only set apart to supply the Priesthood. The whole Ceremony of *Huskanawing* is performed after the following Manner.

The choicest and briskest young Men of the Town, and such only as have acquired some Treasure by their Travels and Hunting, are chosen out by the Rulers to be *Huskanawed*; and whoever refuses to undergo this Process, dares not remain among them. Several of those odd preparatory Fopperies are premis'd in the Beginning, which have been before related; but the principal Part of the Business is, to carry them into the Woods, and there keep them under Confinement, and destitute of all Society, for several Months; giving them no other Sustenance, but the Infusion, or Decoction of some poisonous intoxicating Roots; by virtue of which Physick, and by the Severity of the Discipline, which they undergo, they become stark staring Mad: In which raving Condition they are kept eighteen or twenty Days. During these Extremities, they are shut up, Night and Day, in a strong Inclosure made on Purpose; one of which I saw, belonging to the *Pamaunkie Indians*, in the Year 1694. It was in Shape like a Sugar-loaf, and every way open like a Lattice, for the Air to pass through, as in Tab. 4. Fig. 3. In this Cage thirteen

teen young Men had been *Huskanaw'd*, and had not been a Month set at liberty, when I saw it. Upon this Occasion it is pretended, that these poor Creatures drink so much of that Water of *Lethe*, that they perfectly lose the Remembrance of all former Things, even of their Parents, their Treasure, and their Language. When the Doctors find that they have drank sufficiently of the *Wysoccan*, (so they call this mad Potion) they gradually restore them to their Senses again, by lessening the Intoxication of their Diet; but before they are perfectly well, they bring them back into their Towns, while they are still wild and crazy, through the Violence of the Medicine. After this they are very fearful of discovering any thing of their former Remembrance; for if such a thing should happen to any of them, they must immediately be *Huskanaw'd* again; and the second time the Usage is so severe, that seldom any one escapes with Life. Thus they must pretend to have forgot the very use of their Tongues, so as not to be able to speak, nor understand any thing that is spoken, till they learn it again. Now, whether this be real or counterfeit, I don't know; but certain it is, that they will not for some time take notice of any Body, nor any thing, with which they were before acquainted, being still under the Guard of their Keepers, who constantly wait upon them every where, till they have learnt all Things perfectly over again. Thus they unlive their former Lives, and commence Men, by forgetting that they ever have been Boys. If under this Exercise any one should die, I suppose the Story of *Okee*, mention'd by *Smith*, is the Salvo for it: For (says he) *Okee* was to have such as were his by Lot; and such were said to be sacrificed.

Now this Conjecture is the more probable, because we know that *Okee* has not a share in every
Huska-

Huskanawing; for tho' two young Men happen'd to come short Home, in that of the *Pamaunkie Indians*, which was perform'd in the Year 1694, yet the *Appamattucks*, formerly a great Nation, tho' now an inconsiderable People, made an *Huskanaw* in the Year 1690, and brought home the same Number they carried out.

§. 33. I can account no other way for the great Pains and Secrecy of the Keepers, during the whole Process of this Discipline, but by assuring you, that it is the most meritorious Thing in the World, to discharge that Trust well, in order to their Preferment to the greatest Posts in the Nation, which they claim as their undoubted Right, in the next Promotion. On the other Hand, they are sure of a speedy Passport into the other World, if they should by their Levity or Neglect, shew themselves in the least unfaithful.

Those which I have observ'd to have been *Huskanawed*, were lively handsome well-timber'd young Men, from fifteen to twenty Years of Age or upward, and such as were generally reputed rich.

I confess, I judg'd it at the first sight to be only an Invention of the Seniors, to engross the young Men's Riches to themselves; for, after suffering this Operation, they never pretended to call to mind any thing of their former Property: But their Goods were either shared among the old Men, or brought to some public Use; and so those Youngers were oblig'd to begin the World again.

But the *Indians* detest this Opinion, and pretend that this violent Method of taking away the Memory, is to release the Youth from all their childish Impressions, and from that strong Partiality to Persons and Things, which is contracted before Reason comes to take place. They hope by this pro-

proceeding, to root out all the Prepossessions and unreasonable Prejudices which are fixt in the Minds of Children. So that, when the young Men come to themselves again, their Reason may act freely, without being byas'd by the Cheats of Custom and Education. Thus also they become discharg'd from the Remembrance of any Tyes by Blood, and are establish'd in a State of Equality and perfect Freedom, to order their Actions, and dispose of their Persons, as they think fit, without any other Controll, than that of the Law of Nature. By this means also they become qualify'd, when they have any public Office, equally and impartially to administer Justice, without having respect either to Friend or Relation. *Puffend. Pag. 7. Book 1.* A prosylite of Justice of the *Jews* had a new Soul.

§. 34. The *Indians* offer Sacrifice almost upon every new Occasion; as when they travel or begin a long Journey, they burn Tobacco instead of Incense, to the Sun, to bribe him to send them fair Weather, and a prosperous Voyage: When they cross any great Water, or violent Fresh, or Torrent, they throw in Tobacco, Puccoon, Peak, or some other valuable Thing, that they happen to have about them, to intreat the Spirit presiding there, to grant them a safe Passage. It is call'd a Fresh, when after very great Rains, or (as we suppose) after a great Thaw of the Snow and Ice lying upon the Mountains to the Westward, the Water descends in such Abundance into the Rivers, that they overflow the Banks, which bound their Streams at other Times.

Likewise when the *Indians* return from War, from Hunting, from great Journies, or the like, they offer some Proportion of their Spoils, of their chiefest Tobacco, Furs and Paint, as also the fat, and choice Bits of their Game.

§. 35. I never could learn that they had any certain Time or set Days for their Solemnities : But they have appointed Feasts, that happen according to the several Seasons. They solemnise a Day for the plentiful coming of their wild Fowl, such as Geese, Ducks, Teal, &c. for the Returns of their hunting Seasons, and for the ripening of certain Fruits: But the greatest Annual Feast they have, is at the time of their Corn-gathering, at which they revel several Days together. To these they universally contribute, as they do to the gathering in the Corn. On this occasion they have their greatest variety of Pastimes, and more especially of their War-Dances, and heroick Songs; in which they boast, that their Corn being now gather'd, they have Store enough for their Women and Children; and have nothing to do, but to go to War, travel, and to seek out for new Adventures.

§. 36. They make their Account by Units, Tens, Hundreds, &c. as we do; but they reckon the Years by the Winters, or *Cobonks*, as they call them; which is a Name taken from the Note of the wild Geese, intimating so many times of the wild Geese coming to them, which is every Winter. They distinguish the several Parts of the Year, by five Seasons, viz. The budding or blooming of the Spring; the earing of the Corn, or roasting ear time; the Summer, or highest Sun; the Corn-gathering or fall of the Leaf; and the Winter, or *Cobonks*. They count the Months likewise by the Moons, tho' not with any Relation to so many in a Year, as we do: But they make them return again by the same Name, as the Moon of Stags, the Corn Moon, the first and second Moon of *Cobonks*, &c. They have no Distinction
of

of the Hours of the Day, but divide it only into three Parts, the Rise, Power, and Lowering of the Sun. And they keep their Account by Knots on a String, or Notches on a Stick, not unlike the *Peruvian Quippoes*.

§. 37. In this State of Nature, one would think they should be as pure from Superstition, and over-doing Matters in Religion, as they are in other Things: But I find it is quite the contrary; for this Simplicity gives the cunning Priest a greater Advantage over them, according to the *Romish* Maxim, *Ignorance is the Mother of Devotion*. For, no bigotted Pilgrim appears more zealous, or strains his Devotion more at the Shrine, than these believing *Indians* do, in their idolatrous Adorations. Neither do the most refin'd Catholicks undergo their Penance with so much Submission, as these poor Pagans do the Severities, which their Priests inflict upon them.

They have likewise in other Cases many fond and idle Superstitions; as for the purpose: By the Falls of *James River* upon Colonel *Byrd's* Land, there lyes a Rock which I have seen, about a Mile from the River, wherein are fairly imprest several Marks like the Footsteps of a gigantick Man, each Step being about five Foot asunder: These they aver to be the Track of their God.

This is not unlike what the Fathers of the *Romish* Church tells us, that our Lord left the Print of his Feet on the Stone, whereon he stood while he talk'd with *St. Peter*; which Stone was afterward preserv'd as a very sacred Relique, and after several Translations, was at last fix'd in the Church of *St. Sebastian* the Martyr, where it is kept, and visited with great Expressions of Devotion. So
that

that the *Indians*, as well as these, are not without their pious Frauds.

§. 38. As the People have a great Reverence for the Priest, so the Priest very oddly endeavours to preserve their Respect, by being as hideously ugly as he can, especially when he appears in Public; for besides, that the Cut of his Hair is peculiar to his Function, as in Tab. 4. Book 3. and the hanging of his Cloak, with the Fur reverse and falling down in Flakes, looks horridly shagged, he likewise bedaubs himself in that frightful Manner with Paint, that he terrifies the People into a Veneration for him.

The Conjurer is a Partner with the Priest, not only in the Cheat, but in the Advantages of it, and sometimes they officiate for one another. When this Artist is in the Act of Conjunction, or of *Pauwawing*, as they term it, he always appears with an Air of Haste, or else in some convulsive Posture, that seems to strain all the Faculties, like the *Sy-bils*, when they pretended to be under the Power of Inspiration. At these Times, he has a black Bird with expanded Wings fasten'd to his Ear, differing in nothing but Colour, from *Mahomet's* Pidgeon. He has no cloathing but a small Skin before, and a Pocket at his Girdle, as in Tab. 4. Book 3.

The *Indians* never go about any considerable Enterprize, without first consulting their Priests and Conjurers; for the most ingenious amongst them are brought up to those Functions, and by that means become better instructed in their Histories, than the rest of the People. They likewise engross to themselves all the Knowledge of Nature, which is handed to them by Tradition from their Forefathers; by which means they are able to make a
truer

truer Judgment of Things, and consequently are more capable of advising those that consult them upon all occasions. These Reverend Gentlemen are not so entirely given up to their religious Austerities, but they sometimes take their Pleasure (as well as the Laity) in Fishing, Fowling and Hunting.

§. 39. The *Indians* have Posts fix'd round their *Quioccasau*, which have Men's Faces carved upon them, and are painted. They are likewise set up round some of their other celebrated Places, and make a Circle for them to dance about, on certain solemn occasions. They very often set up pyramidal Stones, and Pillars, which they colour with *Puccoon*, and other Sorts of Paint, and which they adorn with *Peak*, *Roenoke*, &c. To these they pay all outward Signs of Worship and Devotion, not as to God, but as they are Hieroglyphicks of the Permanency and Immutability of the Diety; because these, both for Figure and Substance, are of all Sublunary Bodies, the least Subject to decay or change; they also for the same Reason keep Baskets of Stones in their Cabins. Upon this account too, they offer Sacrifice to running Streams, which by the Perpetuity of their Motion, typify the Eternity of God.

They erect Altars where-ever they have any remarkable occasion; and because their principal Devotion consists in Sacrifice, they have a profound Respect for these Altars. They have one particular Altar, to which, for some mystical Reason, many of their Nations pay an extraordinary Veneration; of this Sort was the Chrystal Cube, mention'd Book II. Chap. 3. §. 8. The *Indians* call this by the Name of *Pawcorance*, from whence proceeds the great Reverence they have for a small

Bird that uses the Woods, and in their Note continually sound that Name. This Bird flies alone, and is only heard in the Twilight. They say, this is the Soul of one of their Princes; and on that score, they would not hurt it for the World. But there was once a profane *Indian* in the upper Parts of *James River*, who, after Abundance of Fears and Scruples, was at last brib'd to kill one of them with his Gun; but the *Indians* say, he paid dear for his Presumption, for in few Days after he was taken away, and never more heard of: I have young Birds of this Kind.

When they travel by any of these Altars, they take great care to instruct their Children and young People in the particular Occasion and Time of their Erection, and recommend the Respect which they ought to have for them; so that their careful Observance of these Traditions, proves almost as good a Memorial of such Antiquities, as written Records; especially for so long as the same People continue to inhabit in, or near the same Place.

I can't understand that their Women ever pretended to intermeddle with any Offices, that relate to the Priesthood, or Conjunction.

§. 40. The *Indians* are religious in preserving the Corpses of their Kings and Rulers after Death, which they order in the following Manner. First, they neatly flay off the Skin as entire as they can, flitting it only in the Back; then they pick all the Flesh off from the Bones as clean as possible, leaving the Sinews fastned to the Bones, that they may preserve the Joints together; then they dry the Bones in the Sun, and put them into the Skin again, which in the mean time has been kept from drying or shrinking; when the Bones are placed right in the Skin, they nicely fill up the Vacui-
N ties

ties, with a very fine white Sand. After this they sew up the Skin again, and the Body looks as if the Flesh had not been removed. They take care to keep the Skin from shrinking, by the help of a little Oil or Grease, which saves it also from Corruption. The Skin being thus prepar'd, they lay it in an Apartment for that purpose, upon a large Shelf rais'd above the Floor. This Shelf is spread with Mats, for the Corps to rest easy on, and skreen'd with the same, to keep it from the Dust. The Flesh they lay upon Hurdles in the Sun to dry, and when it is thoroughly dried, it is sewed up in a Basket, and set at the Feet of the Corps, to which it belongs. In this place also they set up a *Quiocos*, or Idol, which they believe will be a Guard to the Corps. Here Night and Day one or other of the Priests must give his Attendance, to take care of the dead Bodies. So great an Honour and Veneration have these ignorant and unpolisht People for their Princes, even after they are dead.

The Mat is suppos'd to be turn'd up in the Figure, that the inside may be viewed.

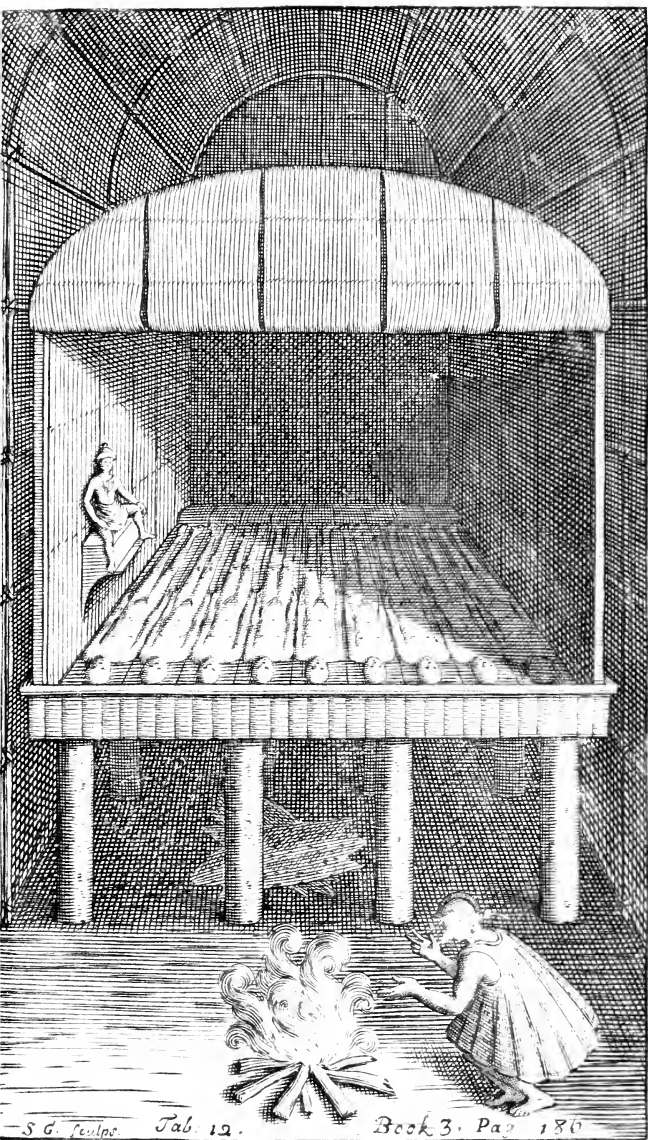
Tab. 12. represents the Burial of the Kings.



C H A P. IX.

Of the Diseases and Cures of the Indians.

§. 41. **T**HE *Indians* are not subject to many Diseases; and such as they have, generally come from excessive Heats, and sudden Colds, which they as suddenly get away by Sweating. But if the Humour happen to fix, and make a pain in any particular Joint, or Limb, their general





ral Cure then is by burning, if it be in any Part that will bear it; their Method of doing this, is by little Sticks of Lightwood, the Coal of which will burn like a hot Iron; the sharp Point of this they run into the Flesh, and having made a Sore, keep it running till the Humour be drawn off: Or else they take Punck, (which is a Sort of a soft Touchwood, cut out of the Knots of Oak or Hickory Trees, but the Hickory affords the best,) this they shape like a Cone, (as the *Japaneſes* do their *Moxa* for the Gout) and apply the Basis of it to the place affected. Then they set fire to it, letting it burn out upon the part, which makes a running Sore effectually.

They use sucking in Sores frequently, and scarifying, which, like the *Mexicans*, they perform with a Rattle-Snake's Tooth. They seldom cut deeper than the *Epidermis*; by which means they give passage to those sharp waterish Humours, that lye between the two Skins, and cause Inflammations. Sometimes they make use of Reeds for cauterizing, which they heat over the Fire, till they are ready to flame, and then apply them upon a piece of thin wet Leather, to the place aggriev'd, which makes the Heat more piercing.

Their Priests are always Physicians, and by the Method of their Education in the Priesthood, are made very knowing in the hidden Qualities of Plants, and other natural Things, which they count a Part of their Religion to conceal from every Body, but from those that are to succeed them in their holy Function. They tell us, their God will be angry with them, if they should discover that Part of their Knowledge; so they suffer only the Rattle Snake Root to be known, and such other Antidotes, as must be immediately apply'd; because their Doctors can't be always at

hand to remedy those sudden Misfortunes, which generally happen in their Hunting or Travelling.

They call their Phyfick *Wifoccan*, not from the Name of any particular Root or Plant, but as it fignifies Medicine in General. So that *Heriot*, *De Bry*, *Smith*, *Purchafs* and *De Laet*, feem all to be mistaken in the Meaning of this word *Wighfacan*, which they make to be the Name of a particular Root : And fo is *Parkinfon* in the word *Woghfacan*, which he will have to be the Name of a Plant. Nor do I think there is better Authority for applying the word *Wifank* to the Plant *Vincetoxicum Indianum Germanicum*, or *Winank* to the *Saffafra*s Tree.

The Phyfick of the *Indians*, confifts for the moft part, in the Roots and Barks of Trees, they very rarely uſing the Leaves either of Herbs or Trees ; what they give inwardly, they infuſe in Water, and what they apply outwardly, they ſtamp or bruife, adding Water to it, if it has not Moiſture enough of it ſelf ; with the thin of this they bath the Part affected, then lay on the thick, after the Manner of a Poultis, and commonly dreſs round leaving the fore place bare.

§. 42. They take great delight in Sweating, and therefore in every Town they have a Sweating-houſe, and a Doctor is paid by the Publick to attend it. They commonly uſe this to reſreſh themſelves, after they have been fatigued with Hunting, Travel, or the like, or elſe when they are troubled with Agues, Aches, or Pains in their Limbs. Their Method is thus ; the Doctor takes three or four large Stones, which after having heated red hot, he places them in the Middle of the Stove, laying on them ſome of the inner Bark of Oak beaten in a Mortar, to keep them from burning. This being done, they creep in ſix or eight at a time

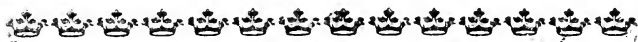
time, or as many as the place will hold, and then close up the Mouth of the Stove, which is usually made like an Oven, in some Bank near the Water side. In the mean while, the Doctor, to raise a Steam, after they have been stewing a little while, pours cold Water on the Stones, and now and then sprinkles the Men to keep them from fainting. After they have sweat as long as they can well endure it, they fall out, and (tho' it be in the Depth of Winter) forthwith plunge themselves over Head and Ears in cold Water, which instantly closes up the Pores, and preserves them from taking cold. The heat being thus suddenly driven from the extreme Parts to the Heart, makes them a little feeble for the present, but their Spirits rally again, and they instantly recover their Strength, and find their Joints as supple and vigorous as if they never had travel'd, or been indispos'd. So that I may say as *Bellonius* does in his Observations on the *Turkish* Bagnio's, all the Cruelties contracted in their Bodies, are by this means evaporated and carry'd off. The *Muscovites* and *Finlanders* are said to use this way of Sweating also. "It is almost a Miracle, says *Olearius*, to "see how their Bodies, accusom'd to and harden'd by Cold, can endure so intense a Heat, "and how that when they are not able to endure "it longer, they come out of the Stoves as naked as they were born, both Men and Women, "and plunge into cold Water, or cause it to be "poured on them. *Trav. into Musc. l. 3. p. 67.*

The *Indians* also pulverise the Roots of a kind of *Anchuse* or yellow *Alkanet*, which they call *Puccoon*, and of a Sort of wild *Angelica*, and mixing them together with Bear's Oil, make a yellow Ointment, with which, after they have bath'd, they anoint themselves Capapee; this supples the Skin, renders them nimble and active, and withal

so closes up the Pores, that they lose but few of their Spirits by Perspiration. *Piso* relates the same of the *Brazilians*; and my Lord *Bacon* asserts, that Oil and fat Things do no less conserve the Substance of the Body, than Oil-colours and Varnish do that of the Wood.

They have also a farther Advantage of this Ointment; for it keeps all Lice, Fleas, and other troublesome Vermine from coming near them; which otherwise, by reason of the Nastiness of their Cabins, they would be very much infested with.

Smith talks of this *Puccoon*, as if it only grew on the Mountains, whereas it is common to all the Plantations of the *English*, now on the Land Frontiers.



CH A P. X.

Of the Sports, and Pastimes of the Indians.

§. 43. **T**HEIR Sports and Pastimes are Singing, Dancing, Instrumental Musick, and some boisterous Plays, which are perform'd by Running, Catching and Leaping upon one another; they have also one great Diversion, to the practising of which are requisite whole Handfuls of little Sticks or hard Straws, which they know how to count, as fast as they can cast their Eyes upon them, and can handle with a surprising Dexterity.

Their Singing is not the most charming that I have heard; it consists much in exalting the Voice, and is full of slow melancholy Accents. However, I must allow even this Musick to contain some wild Notes that are agreeable.

Their Dancing is perform'd either by few or a great Company, but without much regard either to Time or Figure. The first of these is by one or two Persons, or at most by three. In the mean while, the Company sit about them in a Ring upon the Ground, singing outrageously and shaking their Rattles. The Dancers sometimes sing, and sometimes look menacing and terrible, beating their Feet furiously against the Ground, and shewing ten thousand Grimaces and Distortions. The other is perform'd by a great Number of People, the Dancers themselves forming a Ring, and moving round a Circle of carv'd Posts, that are set up for that Purpose; or else round a Fire, made in a convenient Part of the Town; and then each has his Rattle in his Hand, or what other Thing he fancies most, as his Bow and Arrows, or his *Tomahawk*. They also dres themselves up with Branches of Trees, or some other strange Accoutrements. Thus they proceed, dancing and singing, with all the antick Postures they can invent; and he's the bravest Fellow that has the most prodigious Gestures. Sometimes they place three young Women in the Middle of the Circle, as you may see in the Figure.

Tab. 13. represents a solemn Festival Dance of the *Indians*, round their carv'd Posts.

Those which on each side are hopping upon their Hams, take that way of coming up to the Ring, and when they find an Opportunity strike in among the rest.

Captain *Smith* relates the Particulars of a Dance made for his Entertainment, by *Pocahontas*, Daughter of the Emperor *Powhatan*, to divert him, till

her Father came, who happen'd not to be at home when *Smith* arriv'd at his Town. *Gen. Hist.* p. 67.

“ In a fair plain Field they made a Fire, before
 “ which he sat down upon a Mat, when suddenly
 “ amongst the Woods was heard such a hide-
 “ ous noise and shrieking, that the *English* betook
 “ themselves to their Arms, and seized on two or
 “ three old Men by them, supposing *Powhatan*,
 “ with all his Power was coming to surprize them.
 “ But presently *Pocahontas* came, willing him to
 “ kill her, if any hurt were intended; and the be-
 “ holders, which were Men, Women, and Chil-
 “ dren, satisfied the Captain that there was no such
 “ Matter. Then presently they were presented
 “ with this Antick; thirty young Women came
 “ naked out of the Woods, only cover'd behind
 “ and before with a few green Leaves, their Bo-
 “ dies all painted, some of one Colour, some of
 “ another, but all differing; their Leader had a
 “ fair pair of Buck's Horns on her Head, an Otter's
 “ Skin at her Girdle, another at her Arm, a Qui-
 “ ver of Arrows at her Back, and a Bow and Ar-
 “ rows in her Hand. The next had in her Hand
 “ a Sword, another a Club, another a Potstick;
 “ all of them being horned alike: The rest were all
 “ set out with their several Devices. These Fiends,
 “ with most hellish Shouts and Cries, rushing from
 “ among the Trees, cast themselves in a Ring
 “ about the Fire, singing and dancing with most
 “ excellent ill Variety, oft falling into their in-
 “ fernal Passions, and then solemnly betaking them-
 “ selves again to sing and dance; having spent an
 “ Hour in this *Mascarado*, as they enter'd, in like
 “ Manner they departed.

They have a Fire made constantly every Night,
 at a convenient Place in the Town, whither all
 that

that have a mind to be merry, at the publick Dance or Musick, resort in the Evening.

Their Musical Instruments are chiefly Drums and Rattles: Their Drums are made of a Skin, stretched over an Earthen Pot half full of Water. Their Rattles are the Shell of a small Gourd, or Macock of the creeping Kind, and not of those call'd *Callibaches*, which grow upon Trees; of which the *Brasilians* make their *Maraka*, or *Tamaraka*, a Sort of Rattle also, as *Clusius* seems to intimate.



CHAP. XI.

Of the Laws, and Authority of the Indians among one another.

§. 44. **T**HE *Indians* having no Sort of Letters among them, as has been before observ'd, they can have no written Laws; nor did the Constitution in which we found them, seem to need many. Nature and their own Convenience having taught them to obey one Chief, who is Arbitrator of all Things among them. They claim no Property in Lands, but they are in Common to a whole Nation. Every one hunts and fishes, and gathers Fruits in all Places. Their Labour in tending Corn, Pompions, Melons; &c. is not so great, that they need quarrel for Room, where the Land is so fertile, and where so much lyes uncultivated.

They bred no Sort of Cattle, nor had any thing that could be call'd Riches. They valued Skins and Furs for use, and *Peak* and *Roenoke* for Ornament.

They are very severe in Punishing ill Breeding, of which every *Werowance* is undisputed Judge, who

who never fails to lay a rigorous Penalty upon it: An Example whereof I had from a Gentleman that was an Eye-witness; which was this.

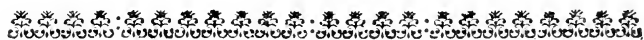
In the Time of *Bacon's* Rebellion, one of these *Werowances*, attended by several others of his Nation, was treating with the *English* in *New Kent* County, about a Peace; and during the time of his Speech, one of his Attendants presum'd to interrupt him, which he resented as the most unpardonable Affront that could be offer'd him; and therefore he instantly took his *Tomahawk* from his Girdle, and split the Fellow's Head, for his Presumption. The poor Fellow dying immediately upon the Spot, he commanded some of his Men to carry him out, and went on again with his Speech where he left off, as unconcern'd as if nothing had happen'd.

The *Indians* never forget, nor forgive an Injury, till Satisfaction be given, be it National, or Personal: But it becomes the Business of their whole Lives; and even after that, the Revenge is entail'd upon their Posterity, till full Reparation be made.

§. 45. The Titles of Honour that I have observ'd among them peculiar to themselves, are only *Cockarouse* and *Werowance*, besides that of the King, and Queen: But of late they have borrow'd some Titles from us, which they bestow among themselves. A *Cockarouse* is one that has the Honour to be of the King or Queen's Council, with Relation to the Affairs of the Government, and has a great Share in the Administration. A *Werowance* is a Military Officer, who of Course takes upon him the Command of all Parties, either of Hunting, Travelling, Warring, or the like, and the word signifies a War-Captain.

The Priests and Conjurers are also of great Authority, the People having Recourse to them for Counsel and Direction, upon all occasions; by which means, and by help of the first Fruits and frequent Offerings, they riot in the Fat of the Land, and grow rich upon the Spoils of their ignorant Country-men.

They have also People of a Rank inferior to the Commons, a Sort of Servants among them. These are call'd black Boys, and are attendant upon the Gentry, to do their servile Offices, which, in their State of Nature, are not many. For they live barely up to the present Relief of their Necessities, and make all Things easy and comfortable to themselves, by the Indulgence of a kind Climate, without toiling and perplexing their Minds for Riches, which other People often trouble themselves to provide for uncertain and ungrateful Heirs. In short, they seem, as possessing nothing, and yet enjoying all Things.



CHAP XII.

Of the Treasure or Riches of the Indians.

§. 46. **T**HE *Indians* had nothing which they reckoned Riches, before the *English* went among them, except *Peak*, *Roenoke*, and such like trifles made out of the *Cunk* Shell. These pass with them instead of Gold and Silver, and serv'd them both for Money, and Ornament. It was the *English* alone that taught them first to put a value on their Skins and Furs, and to make a Trade of them.

Peak is of two Sorts, or rather of two Colours, for both are made of one Shell, tho' of different

rent Parts; one is a dark Purple Cylinder, and the other a white; they are both made in Size, and Figure alike, and commonly much resembling the *English Buglas*, but not so transparent nor so brittle. They are wrought as smooth as Glass, being one third of an Inch long, and about a Quarter Diameter, strung by a hole drill'd thro' the Center. The dark Colour is the dearest, and distinguish'd by the Name of *Wampom Peak*. The *English Men* that are call'd *Indian Traders*, value the *Wampom Peak*, at eighteen Pence per Yard, and the white *Peak* at nine Pence. The *Indians* also make Pipes of this, two or three Inches long, and thicker than ordinary, which are much more valuable. They also make *Runtees* of the small Shell, and grind them as smooth as *Peak*. These are either large like an oval Bead, and drill'd the length of the Oval, or else they are circular and flat, almost an Inch over, and one Third of an Inch thick, and drill'd Edgeways. Of this Shell they also make round Tablets of about four Inches Diameter, which they polish as smooth as the other, and sometimes they etch or grave thereon, Circles, Stars, a half Moon, or any other Figure suitable to their Fancy. These they wear instead of Medals before or behind their Neck, and use the *Peak*, *Runtees*, and Pipes for Coronets, Bracelets, Belts, or long Strings hanging down before the Breast, or else they lace their Garments with them, and adorn their *Tomahawks*, and every other thing that they value.

They have also another Sort which is as current among them, but of far less Value; and this is made of the Cockle shell, broken into small bits with rough Edges, drill'd through in the same Manner as Beads, and this they call *Roenoke*, and use it as the *Peak*.

These

These Sorts of Money have their Rates set up-
on them as unalterable, and current as the values
of our Money are.

The *Indians* have likewise some Pearl amongst
them, and formerly had many more, but where
they got them is uncertain, except they found them in
the Oyster-Banks, which are frequent in this Country.



C H A P. XIII.

Of the Handicrafts of the Indians.

§. 46. **B**Efore I finish my Account of the *Indians*,
it will not be amiss to inform you, that
when the *English* went first among them, they had
no Sort of Iron or Steel Instruments: But their
Knives were either sharpen'd Reeds, or Shells, and
their Axes sharp Stones bound to the end of a
Stick, and glued in with Turpentine. By the help
of these, they made their Bows of the Locust
Tree, an excessive hard Wood when it is dry, but
much more easily cut when it is green, of which
they always took the Advantage. They made
their Arrows of Reeds or small Wands, which
needed no other cutting, but in the Length, be-
ing otherwise ready for Notching, Feathering and
Heading. They fledged their Arrows with Tur-
key Feathers, which they fastned with Glue made
of the Velvet Horns of a Deer; but it has not that
Quality it's said to have, of holding against all
Weathers; they arm'd the Heads with a white
transparent Stone, like that of *Mexico* mention'd
by *Peter Martyr*, of which they have many Rocks;
they also headed them with the Spurs of the wild
Turkey Cock.

They rub'd Fire out of particular Sorts of
Wood (as the Ancients did out of the Ivy and
Bays

Bays) by turning the end of a hard Piece upon the side of a Piece that is soft and dry, like a Spindle on its Inke, by which it heats, and at length burns; to this they put sometimes also rotten Wood, and dry Leaves, to hasten the Work.

§. 48. Under the Disadvantage of such Tools they made a shift to fell vast great Trees, and clear the Land of Wood, in Places where they had occasion.

They bring down a great Tree, by making a small Fire round the Root, and keeping the Flame from running upward, until they burn away so much of the Basis, that the least puff of Wind throws it down. When it is prostrate, they burn it off to what length they would have it, and with their Stone *Tomahawks* break off all the Bark, which when the Sap runs, will easily strip, and at other times also, if it be well warm'd with Fire. When it is brought to a due length, they raise it upon a Bed to a convenient Height for their Working, and then begin by gentle Fires to hollow it, and with Scrapers rake the Trunk, and turn away the Fire from one Place to another, till they have deepen'd the Belly of it to their desire: Thus also they shape the Ends, till they have made it a fit Vessel for crossing the Water, and this they call a Canoe, one of which I have seen thirty Foot long.

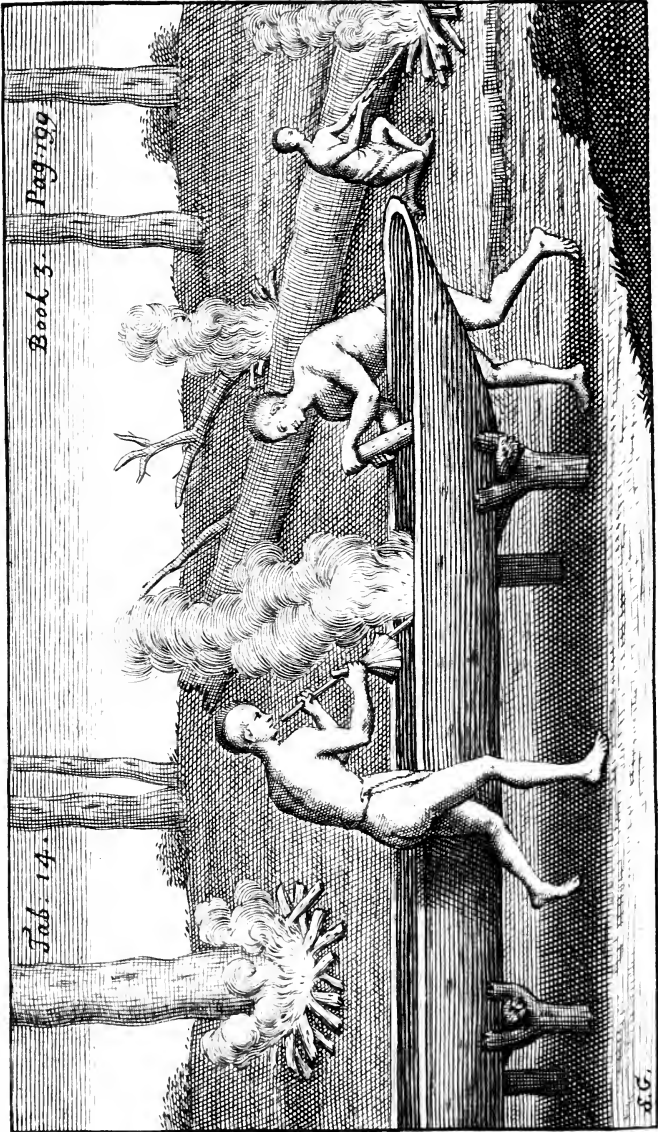
When they wanted any Land to be clear'd of the Woods, they chop'd a Notch round the Trees quite through the Bark with their Stone Hatchets, or *Tomahawks*, and that deaden'd the Trees, so that they sprouted no more, but in a few Years fell down. However, the Ground was plantable, and would produce immediately upon the withering of the Trees. But now for all these Uses they employ Axes, and little Hatchets, which they buy of the *English*. The occasions aforementioned, and the building of their Cabins, are still the greatest use



Tab. 14.

Book 3.

Page 199.



use they have for these Utenfils; because they trouble not themselves with any other Sort of Handicraft, to which such Tools are necessary. Their Household Utenfils are Baskets made of Silk-Grass, Gourds, which grow to the Shapes they desire them, and Earthen Pots to boil Victuals in, which they make of Clay.

Tab. 14. *Shews their Manner of Felling great Trees (before they had Iron Instruments) by firing the Root; and bringing them to fit Lengths, and shaping them for use by Fire alone.*

The *Indians* of *Virginia* are almost wasted, but such Towns, or People as retain their Names, and live in Bodies, are here-under set down; all which together can't raise five hundred fighting Men. They live poorly, and much in Fear of the Neighbouring *Indians*. Each Town, by the Articles of Peace, 1677, pays 3 *Indian* Arrows for their Land, and 20 Beaver-Skins for Protection every Year.

In *Accomack* are 8 Towns, viz.

Matomkin is much decreased of late by the Small Pox, that was carried thither.

Gingoteque. The few remains of this Town are join'd with a Nation of the *Maryland Indians*.

Kiequotank is reduc'd to very few Men.

Matchopungo has a small Number yet living.

Occabanock has a small Number yet living.

Pungoteque. Govern'd by a Queen, but a small Nation.

Oanancock has but four or five Families.

Chiconeffex has very few, who just keep the Name.

Nanduye. A Seat of the Empress. Not above 20 Families, but she hath all the Nations of this Shore under Tribute.

In *Northampton, Gangascoe*, which is almost as numerous as all the foregoing Nations put together.

In *Prince George*, *Wyanoke* is extinct.

In *Charles City*, *Appamatox* extinct.

In *Surery. Nottawayes*, which are about a hundred Bow-Men, of late a thriving and increasing People.

By *Nansamond. Menbeering* has about thirty Bow-men, who keep at a stand.

Nansamond. About thirty Bow-men: They have increased much of late.

In *King William's County, 2. Pamaunkie*, has about forty Bow-men, who decrease.

Chickahomonie, which had about sixteen Bow-men, but lately increas'd.

In *Essex. Rappahannock*, extinct.

In *Richmond. Port-Tabago*, extinct.

In *Northumberland. Wiccomocco*, has but few Men living, which yet keep up their Kingdom, and retain their Fashion; yet live by themselves, separate from all other *Indians*, and from the *English*.

§. 49. Thus I have given a succinct Account of the *Indians*; happy, I think, in their simple State of Nature, and in their Enjoyment of Plenty, without the Curse of Labour. They have on several Accounts reason to lament the Arrival of the *Europeans*, by whose means they seem to have lost their Felicity, as well as their Innocence. The *English* have taken away great Part of their Country, and consequently made every thing less plentiful amongst them. They have introduc'd Drunkenness and Luxury amongst them, which have multiplied their Wants, and put them upon desiring a thousand Things, they never dreamt of before. I have been the more concise in my Account of this harmless People, because I have inserted several Figures, which I hope have both supplied the Defect of Words, and render'd the Descriptions more clear. I shall in the next place proceed to treat of *Virginia* as it is now improv'd, (I should rather say alter'd,) by the *English*; and of its present Constitution and Settlement.

The End of the THIRD BOOK.

BOOK



OF THE
PRESENT STATE
OF
VIRGINIA:

*As this Book must consist of two Parts, First,
The Polity of the Government; Secondly,
The Husbandry and Improvements of the
Country; I shall handle them separately.*

BOOK IV.

PART I.

Of the Civil Polity and Government of Virginia.

CHAP. I.

Of the Constitution of Government in Virginia.

§. I.



Have already hinted, that the first Settlement of this Country, was under the Direction of a Company of Merchants incorporated.

That the first Constitution of Government appointed by them, was by a President and Council,

O

cil, which Council was nominated by the Corporation, or Company in *London*, and the President annually chosen by the People in *Virginia*.

That in the Year 1610, this Constitution was altered, and the Company obtain'd a new Grant of his Majesty; whereby they themselves had the Nomination of the Governor, who was oblig'd to act only by Advice in Council.

That in the Year 1620, an Assembly of Burgeses was first call'd, from all the inhabited parts of the Country, who sat in Consultation with the Governor and Council, for settling the public Affairs of the Plantation;

That when the Company was dissolv'd, the King continued the same Method of Government, by a Governor, Council, and Burgeses; which three being united were call'd the General Assembly.

That this General Assembly debated all the weighty Affairs of the Colony, and enacted Laws for the better Government of the People; and the Governor and Council were to put them in Execution.

That the Governor and Council were appointed by the King, and the Assembly chosen by the People.

Afterwards the Governor had a more extensive Power put into his Hands, so that his Assent in all Affairs became absolutely necessary; yet was he still bound to act by Advice of Council in many things.

Until the Rebellion 1676, the Governor had no Power to suspend the Councillors, nor to remove any of them from the Council-Board.

Then a Power was given him of suspending them, but with Proviso, that he gave substantial Reasons for so doing; and was answerable to his Majesty for the Truth of the Accusation.

Then

Then also this Model of Government by a Governor, Council and Assembly, was confirm'd to them with a farther Clause, That if the Governor should happen to die, or be removed, and no other Person in the Country nominated by the Crown to supply his Place ; then the President, or eldest Councillor, with the Assistance of any five of the Council, should take upon him the Administration of the Government; all which are authorised by Commission and Instructions to the Governor.

Before the Year 1680, the Council sat in the same House with the Burgesses of Assembly, much resembling the Model of the *Scotch* Parliament; and the Lord *Colepeper* taking Advantage of some Disputes among them, procur'd the Council to sit apart from the Assembly; and so they became two distinct Houses, in Imitation of the two Houses of Parliament in *England*, the Lords and Commons; and so is the Constitution at this Day.

§. 2. The Governor is appointed by the Crown; his Commission is under Seal, and runs during Pleasure.

He represents the King's Person there in all things, and is subject to his Instructions,

His Assent is necessary to the Laws, agreed upon by the Council and Assembly; without it no Law can be made.

His Veto to all Laws so assented to is also requisite.

He calls Assemblies by Advice of Council, but prorogues or dissolves them without.

He calls and presides in all Councils of State, and hath his Negative there also.

He appoints Commissioners of County Courts for the Administration of Justice, by Consent of Council.

He grants Commissions to all Officers of the Militia, under the Degree of a Lieutenant General, (which Title he bears himself) as he thinks fit.

He orders and disposes the Militia for the Defence of the Country.

He tests Proclamations.

He disposes of the unpatented Land according to the Charter, the Laws of that Country, and his Instructions; for which end, and for other public Occasions, the Seal of the Colony is committed to his keeping.

All Issues of the public Revenue must bear his Test.

And by virtue of a Commission from the Admiralty, he is made Vice-Admiral.

The Governor's Salary till within these 45 Years last past, was no more than a thousand Pounds a Year; besides which, he had about five hundred more in Perquisites: Indeed, the General Assembly by a public Act, made an Addition of two hundred Pounds a Year to Sir *William Berkeley* in particular, out of the great Respect and Esteem they bore to that Gentleman, who had been a long time a good and just Governor; and who had laid out the greatest Part of his Revenue in Experiments, for the Advantage and Improvement of the Country; and who had besides suffered extremely in the time of the Usurpation. But this Addition was to determine with his Government.

Sir *William Berkeley*, after the short Interval of *Jeffery's* and *Chickley's* being Deputy-Governors, was succeeded by the Lord *Colepepper*; who under pretence of his being a Peer of *England*, obtain'd of King *Charles II.* a Salary of 2000 *l.* besides 160 *l.* a Year for House-rent, because there was no House appointed by the Country for the Governor's

nor's Reception. This Salary has continued ever since to the succeeding Governors.

If the Administration of the Government happen to fall into the hands of the President and Council, there is then usually allow'd to the President, the Addition of five hundred Pounds a Year only; and to the Council, no more than what is given them at other times.

§. 3. The Gentlemen of the Council are appointed by Letter or Instruction from his Majesty, which says no more, but that they be sworn of the Council.

The Number of the Counsellors when compleat is twelve; and if at any time by Death or Removal, there happen to be fewer than nine residing in the Country, then the Governor has Power to appoint and swear into the Council, such of the Gentlemen of the Country, as he shall think fit, to make up that Number, without expecting any Direction from *England*.

The Business of the Council, is to advise and assist the Governor in all important Matters of Government, which he shall consult them in.

In the General Assembly, the Council make the Upper-House, and claim an entire negative Voice to all Laws, as the House of Lords in *England*.

The Salary of the Council is in all but 350 *l. per Ann.* to be proportion'd among them according to their Attendance on General Courts, and Assemblies.

§. 4. The Burgesses of Assembly are elected, and return'd from all parts of the Country, *viz.* from each County two, and from *James City* one; and from the College one; which make up in all 60 Burgesses; they are conven'd by Writs issued from the Secretary's Office, under the Seal of the

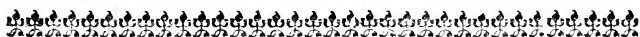
Colony, and the Test of the Governor. These are directed to the Sheriff of each County respectively, and ought to bear Date at least forty Days before the Return. The Freeholders are the only Electors, and where-ever they have a Free-hold, (if they be not Women, or under Age or Aliens) they have a Vote in the Election. The Method of summoning the Free-holders, is by Publication of the Writ, together with the Day appointed by the Sheriff for Election, at every Church and Chapel in the County, two several Sundays successively. The Election is concluded by Plurality of Voices; and if either Party be dissatisfied, or thinks he has not fair Treatment, he may demand a Copy of the Poll, and upon Application to the House of Burgeses, shall have his Complaint inquired into. But to prevent undue Elections, many Acts have been there made agreeably to some lately enacted in *England*.

The first Business of a Convention, by the Governor's Direction, is to make Choice of a Speaker, and to present him in full House to the Governor. Upon this Occasion the Speaker, in the Name of the House, petitions the Governor to confirm the usual Liberties, and Privileges of Assembly, namely, Access to his Person, whenever they shall have Occasion; a Freedom of Speech and Debate in the House, without being farther accountable; a Protection of their Persons and their Servants from Arrest, &c. And these being granted by the Governor, and the Cause of their Meeting declared by him, they proceed to do Business, choosing Committees, and in other things, imitating as near as they can, the Method of the Honourable House of Commons in *England*.

The Laws having duly past the House of Burgeses, the Council, and the Governor's Assent; they are transmitted to the King by the next Shipping,

ping, for his Approbation, his Majesty having another negative Voice. But they immediately become Laws, and are in Force upon the Governor's first passing them, and so remain, if his Majesty don't actually repeal them, although he be not pleased to declare his Royal Assent, one way or other.

There are no appointed times for their Convention; but they are call'd together, whenever the Exigencies of the Country make it necessary, or his Majesty is pleas'd to order any thing to be proposed to them.



CHAP. II.

Of the Sub-divisions of Virginia.

§. 5. **T**HE Country is divided into twenty nine Counties, and the Counties, as they are in Bigness, into fewer or more Parishes, as they are fill'd with Inhabitants.

The Method of bounding the Counties is at this time, with respect to the Convenience of having each County limited to one single River, for its Trade and Shipping: So that any one, whose Concerns are altogether in one County, may not be obliged to seek his Freight and Shipping in more than one River. Whereas at first, they were bounded with respect to the Circuit, and the Proximity of the extremes to one common Center; by which means, one County reached then quite a-cross a neck of Land from River to River. But this way of bounding the Counties being found more inconvenient than the other, it was changed by a Law, into what it is now.

Besides this Division into Counties, and Parishes, there are two other Sub-divisions, which are subject to the Rules and Alterations made by the County-courts; namely into Precincts or Burroughs, for the Limits of Constables; and into Precincts or Walks, for the Surveyors of Highways.

§. 6. There is another Division of the Country into Necks of Land, which are the boundaries of the Escheators, *viz.*

1. The *Northern Neck* between *Patowmeck* and *Rappahannock* Rivers: This is the Proprietary in the Lord *Colepepper's* Family.

2. The Neck between *Rappahannock* and *York* Rivers, within which *Pamaunkey* Neck is included :

3. The Neck between *York* and *James* Rivers:

4. The Lands on the *South* side *James* River:

5. The Land on the *Eastern* Shore; in all, five Divisions. Each of which has its particular Escheat-master.

In the *Northern Neck* are contain'd six Counties, 1. *Lancaster*, *viz.* in which are two Parishes, namely *Christchurch*, and *St. Mary White-chapel*. 2. *Northumberland*, two Parishes *viz.* *Fairfield* and *Boutracy*, and *Wiccocomoco*. 3. *Westmoreland*; two Parishes, *viz.* *Copely* and *Washington*. 4. *Stafford*, two Parishes, *viz.* *St. Paul* and *Overworton*. 5. *Richmond* one Parish, *viz.* *North Farnham*, and part of another, *viz.* *Sittenburn*. 6. *King George* County one Parish, named *Hanover*, the other part of *Sittenburn*.

In the Neck between *Rappahannock* and *York* Rivers are contained six other Counties, *viz.* 1. *Glocester*, in which are four Parishes, *viz.* *Pesso*, *Abingdon*, *Ware* and *Kingston*. 2. *Middlesex*, only one Parish, *viz.* *Christchurch*. 3. *King and Queen*, two Parishes, *viz.* *Stratton Major*, *St. Stephens*. 4. *King*

4. King *William*, two Parishes viz. *St. John's*, and *St. Margarets*. 5. *Essex*, three Parishes, viz. *South Farnham*, *St. Anne*, *St. Mary's*. 6. *Spotsylvania*, one Parish, viz. *St. George*.

In the Neck between *York* and *James River*, there are seven Counties and part of an eighth; the seven entire Counties are, 1. *Elizabeth City*, in which is only one Parish, named also *Elizabeth City Parish*. 2. The *Warwick*, in which are two Parishes, viz. *Denby*, *Mulberry Island*. 3. *York*, in which are two Parishes, viz. *Charles* and *York-Hampton*; and part of a third called *Braton*. 4. *James City*, in which are three Parishes, and part of two others, viz. *James City*, part of *Wilmington*, *Merchants-hundred*, and the other half of *Bruton*. 5. *New-Kent*, two Parishes, viz. *Bisland* and *St. Peter's*. 6. *Charles City*, two Parishes, viz. *Westover* and part of *Wilmington*. 7. *Hanover*, one Parish, viz. *St. Paul's*, and 8. Part of *Henrico County*, on the *North* side *James River*, by which River the Parishes are also divided, there being two Parishes in the whole County, viz. *Henrico* and *St. James*, and part of a third call'd *Bristol*.

On the *South* side *James River* are 7 Counties, and the other part of *Henrico*; the 7 Counties beginning at the Bay, as I have done in all the rest, are, viz. 1. *Princess Anne*, in which is but one Parish, namely *Lynhaven*. 2. *Norfolk*, also one Parish, call'd *Elizabeth River*. 3. *Nansamond*, in which are three Parishes, viz. *Lower-parish*, *Upper-parish*, *Chickaluck*. 4. *Isle of Wight*, in which are two Parishes, viz. *Warwick Squeeke-Bay*, and *New-port*. 5. *Surry*, two Parishes, viz. *Lyon's Creek*, *Southwark*. 6. *Prince George*, in which is one Parish, viz. *Martin Brandon*, and the other part of *Bristol Parish* in *Henrico*. 7. *Brunswick*, a new County constituted towards the South-

ern Pass of the Mountains, on purpose that by extraordinary Encouragements, the Settlements may send up that way first, as is given also to *Spotsylvania* County for the Northern Pass. It is made one Parish, by the Name of St. *Andrew*.

On the Eastern Shore, that is on the East side the great Bay of *Chesapeake*, the place where Sir *William Berkeley* retired to in the Rebellion, without withdrawing from his Government, (as Mr. *Oldmixon* declares he did) are two Counties, 1. *Northampton* having one Parish named *Hungers*. 2. *Accomack* having one Parish named also *Accomack*.

In all there are at present twenty nine Counties, and fifty four Parishes.

§. 7. There is yet another Division of the Countrey, into Districts, according to the Rivers, with respect to the Shipping, and Navigation: These are the bounds appointed for the naval Officers, and Collectors of the public Duties, and are as follow.

1. The Upper-parts of *James River*, from *Hog-Island* upwards.

2. The Lower-parts of *James River*, from *Hog-Island* downwards to the *Capes*, and round *Point-Comfort*, to *Back-River*.

3. *York*, *Poquoson*, *Mobjack-Bay*, and *Pieanketank* Rivers.

4. *Rappahannock River*.

5. *Patowmeck River*.

6. *Pocomoke*, and the other parts on the *Eastern*, made formerly two Districts; but they are now united into one.



C H A P. III.

Of the Public Offices of Government.

§. 8. **B**ESIDES the Governor and Council aforementioned, there are three other General Officers in that Colony, bearing his Majesty's immediate Commission, *viz.* The Auditor of the Revenue, the Receiver General of it, and the Secretary of State.

The Auditor's Business is to audit the Accounts of the public Money of the Government, and duly to transmit the State of them to *England*; such as the Quit-Rents, the Money arising by the two Shillings *per* Hogshead, Fort-duties, the Fines and Forfeitures, and the Profit of Escheats and Rights of Land. His Salary is 6 *per Cent*, of all the public Money. The present Auditor is *John Grimes*, Esq;

The Receiver General is to sell the public Tobacco, collect and receive the Money, make the Account thereof, and pay it out again by the King's Order. His Salary is also 6 *per Cent*. The present Receiver General is *James Roscow*, Esq;

The Secretary's Business is to keep the public Records of the Country, and to take care that they be regularly and fairly made up; namely, all Judgments of the General Court, as likewise all Deeds, and other Writings there proved; and farther, to issue all Writs, both Ministerial, and Judicial relating thereto. To make out and record all Patents for Land, and to take the Return of all Inquests of Escheat.

In his Office is kept a Register of all Commissions of Administration, and Probates of Wills, granted

granted throughout the Colony; as also of all Births, Burials, Marriages, and Persons that go out of the Country: Of all houses of publick Entertainment, and of all publick Officers in the Country; and of many other things, proper to be kept in so general an Office.

From this Office are likewise issued all Writs for choosing of Burgesses, and in it are fil'd authentick Copies of all Proclamations.

The present Secretary is *Tho Ficket Esq;*

The Secretary's Income arises from Fees for all Business done in his Office, which come (*Communibus annis*) to about 70,000 *l.* Tobacco *per Annum*; out of which he pays 12500 and Cask to the Clerks: His other Perquisites proceed out of the Acknowledgments pay'd him annually by the County Clerks, and are besides about forty thousand Pounds of Tobacco and Cask.

§. 9. There are two other General Officers in the Country, who do not receive their Commission and Authority immediately from the Crown; and those are, 1. The Ecclesiastical Commissary, *viz.* the Reverend *James Blair*, authorised by the Right Reverend Father in God, the Lord Bishop of *London*, Ordinary of all the Plantations: 2. The Country's Treasurer, *viz.* the Honourable *Peter Beverly Esq;* authorised by the General Assembly.

The Commissary's Business is to make Visitations of Churches, and have the Inspection of the Clergy. He is allowed 100 *l. per. Ann.* out of the Quittrents.

The Treasurer's Business is to receive the Money from the several Collectors, and to make up the Accounts of the Duties rais'd by some late Acts of Assembly for extraordinary Occasions; his Salary is six *per Cent.* of all Money passing through his Hands.

These

These are all the general Officers belonging to that Government, except the Court of Admiralty, which has no standing Officer. The present Judge of the Admiralty is *John Clayton Esq*;

§. 10. The other publick Commission - Officers in the Government, (except those of the Militia, for whom a Chapter is reserved) are Escheators, Naval Officers, Collectors, Clerks of Courts, Sheriffs of Counties, Surveyors of Land, and Coroners.

The Escheators have their Precincts or Bounds, according to the several Necks of Land; for their Profits, they demand five Pound for each Inquest taken, being paid only as Business happens.

The Naval Officers have their Bounds according to the Districts on the Rivers, and so have the Collectors. The Profits of the first arise from large Fees, upon the entring and clearing of all Ships and Vessels. The Collectors have each a Salary out of the Treasury in *England*, of forty Pounds, sixty Pounds, or an hundred Pounds, according to their several Districts, they being appointed by the honourable Commissioners of the Customs in *England*; pursuant to the Statute made in the 25th Year of King *Charles* the Second; and have moreover Salaries of 20 *per Cent.* on all the Duties they collect, by Virtue of the same Statute, and also large Fees for every Entry and Clearing.

The Naval Officers other Profits, are ten *per Cent.* for all Moneys by them received; both on the two Shillings *per* Hogshead, Port-Duties, Skins and Furs, and also on the new Imposts on Servants and Liquors, when such Duty is in being.

The Clerks of Courts, Sheriffs, and Surveyors, are limited according to the several Counties. The Clerks of Courts receive their Commissions from the Secretay of State; the Sheriffs theirs from the Governor,

Governor, and the Surveyors of Land theirs from the Governors of the College, in whom the Office of Surveyor-General is vested by their Charter.

The Clerks Profits proceed from stated Fees, upon all Law-suits and Business in their respective Courts, except the Clerk of the General Court, who is paid a Salary by the Secretary, who takes the Fees of that Court to himself.

The Sheriff's Profit is likewise by Fees on all Business done in the County-Courts, to which he is the Ministerial Officer, and not Judge of the County-Court, as Mr. *Oldmixon* styles him pag. 298; but the best of his Income is by a Salary of all publick Tobacco, which is constantly put into the Sheriff's Hands, to be collected and put into hundreds, convenient for the Market: He has likewise several other Advantages, which make his Place very profitable.

The Profits of the Surveyors of Land are according to the Trouble they take: Their Fees being proportion'd to the Surveys they make.

The Coroner is a Commission-Officer also, but his Profits are not worth naming, though he has large Fees allowed him, when he does any Business. There are two or more of them appointed in each Parish, as occasion requires; but in the Vacancy, or Absence of any, upon an Exigency, the next Justice of Peace does the Business, and receives the Fee, which is an 133 Pounds of Tobacco for an Inquest on a dead Corpse, any other Business seldom falling in his Way.

§. 11. There are other ministerial Officers that have no Commission; which are, Surveyors of the High-ways, Constables, and Headboroughs. These are appointed, relieved, and altered annually by the County-Courts, as they see occasion;
 † and

and such Bounds are given them, as those Courts think most convenient.

C H A P. IV.

Of the standing Revenues, or public Funds in Virginia.

§. 12. **T**Here are five Sorts of standing publick Revenues in that Country, viz. 1st. A Rent reserv'd by the Crown upon all the Lands granted by Patent: 2^d. A Revenue granted to his Majesty by Act of Assembly, for the Support and Maintenance of the Government. 3^d. A Revenue raised by the Assembly, and kept in their own Disposal, for extraordinary Occasions: 4th. A Revenue raised by the Assembly, and granted to the College: And 5th. A Revenue raised by Act of Parliament in *England* upon the Trade there.

§. 13. 1st. The Rent reserved upon their Lands, is called his Majesty's Revenue of Quit-rents, and is two Shillings for every hundred Acres of Land, patented by any Person in that Country, and two pence *per* Acre for all Lands found to elcheat; this is paid into the Treasury there by all, except the Inhabitants of the *Northern Neck*, who pay nothing to the King; but the whole Quit-rent of that Neck is paid to certain Proprietors of the Lord *Colepeper's* Family, who have the Possession thereof to themselves, upon the Pretensions before rehears'd in the first Part of this Book.

This Revenue has been upwards of fifteen hundred Pounds a Year, since Tobacco has held a good Price. It is lodged in the Receiver General's Hands,

Hands, to be disposed of by his Majesty. This Money is left in Bank there, to be made use of upon any sudden and dangerous Emergency, except when it is called home to *England*: And for Want of such a Bank, Sir *William Berkeley* was not able to make any Stand against *Bacon*, whom otherwise he might easily have subdued, and consequently have prevented above 100,000 Pounds Expence to the Crown of *England*, to pacifie those Troubles.

§. 14. 2^d, The Revenue granted to his Majesty by Act of Assembly, for the Support and Maintenance of the Government, arises first out of a Duty of two Shillings *per* Hoghead, which is paid for every Hoghead of Tobacco exported out of that Colony: 2^{dly}, By a rate of fifteen Pence *per* Tun for every Ship, upon each Return of her Voyage, whether she be empty or full. 3^{dly}, By a Duty of Sixpence *per* Poll for every Passenger bound or free, going into that Country to remain. 4^{thly}, By the Fines and Forfeitures imposed by several Acts of Assembly. There is also an Addition by Wafts and Strays having no Owner, Composition of two Pence *per* Acre for Escheat Land, Chattels Escheat, and the Sale of Land instead of Rights, at five Shillings *per* Right; all which are paid into the Hands of the Receiver General, and disposed of by the Governor and Council, (with Liberty for the Assembly to inspect the Accounts when they meet) for defraying the publick Charges of the Government.

The Revenue, *Communibus Annis*, amounts to more than three thousand Pounds a Year.

§. 15. 3^{dly}, The Revenue arising by Act of Assembly, and reserv'd to their own Disposal, is of two sorts, *viz.* a Duty upon Liquors imported from

from the Neighbouring Plantations, and a Duty upon all Slaves and Servants imported, except *English*.

The Duty on Liquors used to be 4 *d. per* Gallon on all Wines, Rum, and Brandy; and 1 *d. per* Gallon on Beer, Syder, and other Liquors, discounting 20 *per Cent.* upon the Invoice, except Oats.

The Duty on Servants and Slaves used to be twenty Shillings for each Servant, not being a Native of *England* or *Wales*, and five Pounds for each Slave or Negro.

The former of these Duties amounts *Communibus Annis*, to six hundred Pounds a Year, and the latter to more or less, as the Negro Ships happen to arrive.

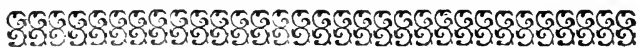
The Charge of building and adorning the Governor's House and Capitol, was defrayed by these Duties, and so was the erecting of the publick Prison.

These Funds are gather'd into the Hands of the Treasurer of the Country, and are disposed of only by order of Assembly.

§. 16. 4^{thly}. The Revenue raised by the Assembly, and granted to the College, is a Duty on all Skins and Furs exported: This Fund raises about an hundred Pounds a Year, and is paid by the Collectors, to the College Treasurer.

§. 17. 5^{thly} and *lastly*, The Fund raised by Act of Parliament in *England* upon the Trade there, is a Duty of one Penny *per* Pound, upon all Tobacco exported to the Plantations, and not carried directly to *England*. This Duty was laid by *Stat. 25. Car. 2. cap. 7.* and granted to the King and his Successors; and by their Gracious Majesties King *William* and Queen *Mary*, it was given to the College. This Duty does not raise both in *Virgi-*

nia and *Maryland*, above two hundred Pounds a Year, and is accounted for, to the College Treasurer.



CHAP V.

Of the Levies for Payment of the Publick County and Parish Debts.

§. 18. **T**HEY have but two Ways of raising Money publickly in that Country, *viz.* by Duties upon Trade,¹ and a Poll-Tax, which they call Levies. Of the Duties upon Trade I have spoken sufficiently in the preceding Chapter: I come therefore now to speak of the Levies, which are a certain Rate or Proportion of Tobacco charged upon the Head of every tithable Person in the Country, upon all alike, without Distinction.

They call all Negroes above sixteen Years of Age tithable, be they male or female; and all white Men of the same Age. But Children and white Women are exempted from all Manner of Duties.

That a true Account of all these tithable Persons may be had, they are annually listed in Crop-time, by the Justices of each County respectively: and the Masters of Families are obliged under great Penalties, then to deliver to those Justices, a true List of all the tithable Persons in their Families.

Their Levies are three fold, *viz.* Publick, County, and Parish Levies.

§. 19. Publick Levies are such as are proportion'd, and laid equally by the General Assembly,
I
upon

upon every tithable Person throughout the whole Colony. These serve to defray several Expences appointed by Law, to be so defrayed; such as the executing of a criminal Slave, who must be made good to his Owner. The taking up of Run-aways, and the paying of the Militia, when they happen to be employed upon the Service. Out of these they likewise pay the several Officers of the Assembly, and some other publick Officers. They farther defray the Charge of the Writs, for the Meeting of the House of Burgeses, publick Expresses, and such like.

The Authority for levying this Rate is given by a short Act of Assembly, constantly prepared for that Purpose.

§. 20. The County Levies are such as are peculiar to each County, and laid by the Justices upon all tithable Persons, for defraying the Charge of their Counties; such as the building and repairing their Court-houses, Prisons, Pillories, Stocks, &c. and the Payment of all Services, render'd to the County in General.

§. 21. The Parish Levies are laid by the Vestry, for the Payment of all Charges incident to the several Parishes, such as the building, furnishing, and adorning their Churches and Chapels; buying Glebes, and building upon them; paying their Ministers, Readers, Clerks, and Sextons.



C H A P. VI.

Of the Courts of Law in Virginia.

§. 22. **I** Have already in the Chronology of the Government, hinted what the Constitution of their Courts was in old time, and that Appeals lay from the General Court to the Assembly. That the General Court from the beginning, took Cognizance of all Causes whatsoever, both Ecclesiastical and Civil, determining every thing by the Standard of Equity and good Conscience. They us'd to come to the Merits of the Cause, as soon as they could without Injustice, never admitting such Impertinences of Form and Nicety, as were not absolutely necessary: And when the Substance of the Case was sufficiently debated, they us'd directly to bring the Suit to a Decision. By this Method all fair Actions were prosecuted with little Attendance, all just Debts were recovered with the least Expence of Money and Time; and all the Tricking and Foppery of the Law happily avoided.

The Lord *Colepepper*, who was a Man of admirable Sense, and well skill'd in the Laws of *England*, admired the Constitution of their Courts, and kept them close to this plain Method, retrenching some Innovations, that were then creeping into them, under the Notion of Form; although, at the same time, he was the occasion of taking away the Liberty of Appeals to the Assembly.

But the Lord *Howard* who succeeded him, endeavour'd to introduce as many of the *English*
 † Forms

Forms as he could, being directly opposite to the Lord *Colepepper* in that point.

And lastly, Governor *Nicholson*, a Man the least acquainted with Law of any of them, endeavour'd to introduce all the Quirks of the *English* Proceedings, by the help of some wretched Pettifoggers, who had the Direction both of his Conscience and his Understanding.

§. 23. They have two sorts of Courts, that differ only in Jurisdiction; namely, the General Court, and the County-Courts.

§. 24. The General Court is a Court held by the Governor and Council, or any five of them, who by Law are the Judges of it, and take cognizance of all Causes, criminal, penal, ecclesiastical and civil. From this Court there is no Appeal, except the thing in Demand, exceed the Value of three hundred Pounds Sterling; in which case, an Appeal is allowed to the King and Council in *England*, and there determin'd by a Committee of the Privy Council, call'd the Lords of Appeals; the like Custom being used for all the other Plantations. In criminal Cases I don't know that there's any Appeal from the Sentence of this Court; but the Governor is authoris'd, by his Commission, to pardon Persons found guilty of any Crime whatsoever, except of Treason and wilful Murder; and even in those cases, he may reprieve the Criminal, which Reprieve stands good, and may be continued from time to time until his Majesty's Pleasure be signified therein.

§. 25. This Court is held twice a Year, beginning on the 15th of *April*, and on the 15th of *October*: Each time it continues eighteen Days, excluding Sundays, if the Business hold them so long:

And these were formerly the only times of Goal-Delivery; but now by the Governor's Commission, he appoints two other Courts of Goal-Delivery; and the King allows 100 Pounds for each Court to defray the Charge thereof.

§. 26. The Officers attending this General Court, are the Sheriff of the County, wherein it sits, and his Under-Officers. Their Business is to call the Litigants, and the Evidences into Court, and to impanel Juries: But each Sheriff in his respective County, makes Arrests, and returns the Writs to this Court.

§. 27. The Way of impanneling Juries to serve in this Court, is thus: The Sheriff and his Deputies every Morning that the Court sits, goes about the Town, summoning the best of the Gentlemen, who resort thither from all Parts of the Country. The Condition of this Summons is, that they attend the Court that Day to serve upon the Jury, (it not being known whether there will be occasion or no:) And if any Cause happen to require a Jury, they are then sworn to try the Issue, otherwise they are in the Evening of course, dismiss'd from all farther Attendance; though they be not formally discharged by the Court. By this means are procured the best Juries this Country can afford; for if they should be summon'd by Writ of *Venire*, from any particular County, that County cannot afford so many qualify'd Persons as are here to be found, because of the great Resort of Gentlemen from all Parts of the Colony to these Courts, as well to see Fashions, as to dispatch their particular Business. Nor is Vicinage necessary there, to distinguish the several Customs of particular Places, the whole Country being as one Neighbourhood, and hav-

ing

ing the same Tenures of Land, Usages and Customs.

The Grand-Juries are impanneled much after the same manner; but because they require a greater Number of Men, and the Court is always desirous to have some, from all Parts of the Country, they give their Sheriff order a day or two before, to provide his Pannel.

§. 28. In Criminal Matters this Method is a little altered; because a Knowledge of the Life, and Conversation of the Party, may give Light to the Jury in their Verdict. For this reason a Writ of *Venire* issues in such Cases, to summon six of the nearest Neighbours to the Criminal, who must be of the same County wherein he lived; which Writ of *Venire* is returned by the Sheriff of the respective County, to the Secretary's Office, and the Names are taken from thence, by the Sheriff attending the General Court, and put in the Front of the Pannel, which is filled up with the Names of the other Gentlemen summon'd in the Town, to be of the Petty-Jury for the Tryal of that Criminal. If the Prisoner have a Mind to challenge the Jurors, the same Liberty is allowed him there as in *England*; and if the Pannel fall short, by reason of such challenge, it must then be made up of the By-standers.

§. 29. All Actions in that Country are generally brought to a Determination the third Court, unless some special extraordinary Reason be shewn, why the Party can't make his Defence so soon. The Course is thus; upon the Defendant's Non-appearance, Order goes against the Bail, (for a *Capias* is generally their first Process) on condition, that unless the Defendant appear, and plead at

the next Court, Judgment shall then be awarded for the Plaintiff: When the Defendant comes to the next Court he is held to plead; Thus by common course a Year and a half ends a cause in the General Court, and three or four Months in the County Court. If any one appeal from the Judgment of the County-Court, the Tryal always comes on, the succeeding General Court; so that all Business begun in the County-Court, tho' it runs to the utmost of the Law, (without some extraordinary Event) ought to be finished in nine Months.

§. 30. Every one that pleases, may plead his own Cause, or else his Friends for him, there being no Restraint in that case, nor any licensed Practitioners in the Law: If any one be dissatisfied with the Judgment of the County-Court, let it be for any Sum, little or great, he may have an Appeal to the next general Court, giving Security to answer, and abide the Judgment of that Court: but an Action cannot originally be brought in the General Court, under the Value of ten Pounds Sterling, or of two thousand Pounds of Tobacco, except in some particular cases of penal Laws.

§. 31. The County-Courts are constituted by Law, and the Justices thereof appointed by Commission from the Governor with Advice of Council. They consist of eight or more Gentlemen of the County, called Justices of the Peace, the Sheriff being only a ministerial Officer to execute its Process. This Court is held monthly, and has Jurisdiction of all Causes within the County, cognizable by common Law or Chancery, and not touching Life or Member, and never was limited to any Value in its Jurisdiction, as Mr. *Oldmixon* would

would have it, pag. 298: But in the case of Hog-stealing, they may sentence the Criminal to lose his Ears; which is allowed by a particular Act for that Purpose as the Punishment of the second Offence, the third is Felony. In all things they proceed in the same manner as the General Court.

§. 32. This monthly Court hath the care of all Orphans, and of their Estates; and for the binding out, and well ordering of such fatherless Children, who are either without an Estate, or have very little.

In *September* annually they are to inquire into the Keeping and Management of the Orphan, as to his Sustenance and Education, to examine into his Estate, and the Securities thereof; *viz.* whether the Sureties continue to be responsible, and his Lands and Plantations be kept improving, and in Repair, &c. If the Orphan be poor, and bound an Apprentice to any Trade, then their Business is to inquire, how he is kept to his Schooling, and Trade; and if the Court find he is either misused or untaught, they take him from that Master, and put him to another of the same Trade, or of any other Trade, which they judge best for the Child. They cannot bind an Orphan Boy but to a Trade, or the Sea.

Another charitable Method in favour of the poor Orphans there, is this; That besides their Trade and Schooling, the Masters are generally obliged, to give them at their Freedom, Cattle, Tools, or other things, to the Value of five, six, or ten Pounds, according to the Age of the Child when bound, over and above the usual Quantity of Corn, and Cloaths. The Boys are bound till one and twenty Years of Age, and the Girls till eighteen: At which time, they who have taken any care to improve themselves, generally get well married, and live in Plenty, tho' they had not a farthing of paternal Estate.

Of the Church and Church Affairs.

§. 33. **T**Heir Parishes are accounted large or small, in proportion to the Number of Tithables contained in them, and not according to the Extent of Land.

§, 34. They have in each Parish a convenient Church, built either of Timber, Brick, or Stone, and decently adorn'd with every thing necessary for the Celebration of Divine-Service.

If a Parish be of greater Extent than ordinary, it hath generally a Chapel of Ease; and some of the Parishes have two such Chapels, besides the Church, for the greater Convenience of the Parishioners. In these Chapels the Minister preaches alternately, always leaving a Reader, to read Prayers when he can't attend himself.

§. 35. The People are generally of the Church of *England*, which is the Religion establish'd by Law in that Country, from which there are very few Dissenters. Yet Liberty of Conscience is given to all other Congregations pretending to Christianity, on Condition they submit to all Parish Duties. They have but one set Conventicle amongst them, namely, a Meeting of Quakers in *Nasamond* County, others that have lately been, being now extinct; and 'tis observ'd, by letting them alone, they decrease daily.

§. 36. The Maintenance for a Minister there, is appointed by Law at 16, 000 Pounds of Tobacco *per Annum*, (be the Parish great or small) as also a Dwelling-House and Glebe, together with certain Perquisites, for Marriages, and Funer^{al}

neral Sermons. That which makes the Difference in the Benefices of the Clergy, is the Value of the Tobacco, according to the distinct Species of it, or according to the place of its Growth. Besides, in large and rich Parishes, more Marriages will probably happen, and more Funeral Sermons.

The Fee by Law for a Funeral Sermon, is forty Shillings, or four hundred pounds of Tobacco; for a Marriage by Licence, twenty Shillings, or two hundred pounds of Tobacco, and where the Banns are proclaimed, only 5*s.* or 50 *l.* of Tobacco.

When these Salaries were granted, the Assembly valued Tobacco at 10 Shillings *per* Hundred; at which Rate, the 16, 000 *l.* comes to fourscore pounds Sterling; but in all Parishes where the Sweet-scented grows, since the Law for appointing Agents to view the Tobacco was made, it has generally been sold for double that Value, and never under.

In some Parishes likewise there are by Donation stocks of Cattle and Negroes, on the Glebes, which are also allowed to the Minister, for his Use and Incouragement; he only being accountable for the Surrender of the same Value, when he leaves the Parish.

§. 37. For the well-governing of these, and all other parochial Affairs, a Vestry is appointed in each Parish. These Vestries consist of twelve Gentlemen of the Parish, and were at first chosen by the Vote of the Parishioners; but upon the Death of any, have been continued by the Survivor's electing another in his place. These, in the Name of the Parish, make Presentation of Ministers, and have the sole power of all Parish Assessments. They are qualified for this Employment by subscribing,

scribing, to be conformable to the Doctrine and Discipline of the Church of *England*. If there be a Minister incumbent, he always presides in the Vestry.

For the Ease of the Vestry in General, and for discharging the Business of the Parish, they choose two from among themselves, to be Church-Wardens, which must be annually changed, that the Burthen may lie equally upon all. The Business of these Church-Wardens, is to see the Orders, and Agreements of the Vestry perform'd; to collect all the Parish Tobacco, and distribute it to the several Claimers; to make up the Accounts of the Parish, and to present all Profaneness and Immorality, to the County-Courts, and there prosecute it.

By these the Tobacco of the Minister is collected, and brought to him in Hogsheads convenient for Shipping; so that he is at no farther Trouble, but to receive it in that Condition. This was ordain'd by the Law of the Country, for the Ease of the Ministers, that so they being delivered, from the Trouble of gathering in their Dues, may have the more time to apply themselves to the Excercises of their holy Function, and live in a Decency suitable to their Order. It may here be observed, that the Labour of a dozen Negroes, does but answer this Salary, and seldom yields a greater Crop of sweet-scented Tobacco, than is allowed to each of their Ministers.

§. 38. Probates of Wills and Administrations, are according to their Law, petition'd for in the County Courts; and by them Security taken and certified to the Governor, which if he approves the Commission is then sign'd by them without Fee. Marriage Licenses are issued by the Clerks of those Courts, and sign'd by the Justice in Commission,
or

or by any other Person deputed by the Governor, for which a Fee of twenty Shillings must be paid to the Governor. The Power of Induction, upon Presentation of Ministers, is also in the Governor.

In the Year 1642, when the Sectaries began to spread themselves so much in *England*, the Assembly made a Law against them, to prevent their preaching, and propagating their Doctrines in that Colony. They admitted none to preach in their Churches, but Ministers ordain'd by some Reverend Bishop of the Church of *England*; and the Governor for the time being, as the most suitable publick Person among them, was left sole Judge of the Certificates of such Ordination, and so he has continued ever since.

§. 39. The only thing I have heard the Clergy complain of there, is what they call Precariousness in their Livings; that is, they have not Inductions generally; and therefore are not intituled to a Free-hold: But are liable, without Tryal or Crime alledged, to be put out by the Vestry: And though some have prevailed with their Vestries, to present them for Induction; yet the greater Number of the Ministers have no Induction: But are entertain'd by Agreement with their Vestries; yet are they very rarely turn'd out, without some great Provocation; and then if they have not been abominably scandalous, they immediately get other Parishes: For there is no Benefice whatsoever in that Country that remains without a Minister if they can get one, and no qualified Minister, ever yet return'd from that Country, for want of Preferment. They have now several vacant Parishes.



C H A P. VIII.

Concerning the College.

§. 40. **T**HE College, as has been hinted, was founded by their late Majesties, King *William* and Queen *Mary* of happy Memory, in the Year 1692. Towards the founding of which, they gave 1985. *l.* 14 *s.* 10. *d.* They gave more-over towards the Indowment of it, 20,000 Acres of Land; the Revenue of 1 *d.* *per Pound* on Tobacco, exported to the Plantations from *Virginia* and *Maryland*; and the Surveyor General's Place of that Colony then avoid, and appointed them a Burgeſs to represent them in the Assemblies. The Land hitherto has yielded little or no Profit; the Duty of 1 *d.* *per Pound*, brings in about 200 Pounds a Year; and the Surveyor-General's place, about 50 *l.* a Year. To which the Assembly had added a Duty on Skins and Furs exported, worth about an hundred Pounds a Year.

§. 41. By the same Charter likewise, their Majesties granted a Power to certain Gentlemen, and the Survivors of them, as Trustees to build and stablish the College by the Name of *William* and *Mary* College; to consist of a President, and six Masters, or Professors, and an hundred Scholars, more or less, Graduates, or Non-graduates; enabling the said Trustees, as a Body Corporate, to enjoy Annuities spiritual and temporal, of the value of 2000 *l.* sterl. *per Annum*, with Proviso to convert it to the building and adorning the College

lege ; and then to make over the Remainder to the President and Masters, and their Successors: Who are likewise to become a Corporation, and be enabled to purchase, and hold to the value of 2000 a Year, but no more.

§. 22. The Persons nam'd in the Charter for Trustees, are made Governors and Visitors of the College, and to have a perpetual Succession, by the Name of Governors and Visitors, with Power to fill up their own Vacancies, happening by the Death or Removal of any of them. Their complete Number may be 18, but not to exceed 20, of which one is to be Rector, and annually chosen by themselves, on the first *Monday* after the 25th of *March*.

These have the Nomination of the President and Masters of the College, and all other Officers belonging to it; and the Power of making Statutes and Ordinances, for the better Rule and Government thereof.

§. 43. The Building is to consist of a Quadrangle, two sides of which, are not yet carried up. In this Part are contained all Conveniencies of Cooking, Brewing, Baking, &c. and convenient Rooms for the Reception of the President, and Masters, with many more Scholars than are as yet come to it; in this Part are also the Hall, and School-Room.

§. 44. The College was intended to be an intire Square, when finished; two sides of this were finished in the latter end of Governor *Nicholson's* time, and the Masters and Scholars, with the necessary House-keepers, and Servants were settled in it, and so continued till the first Year of Governor
Nott's

Nott's time, in which it happen'd to be burnt (no Body knows how) down to the Ground, and very little saved that was in it, the Fire breaking out about 10 a Clock at Night, in a publick Time.

The Governor and all the Gentlemen that were in Town, came up to the lamentable Spectacle, many getting out of their Beds. But the Fire had got such Power before it was discover'd, and was so fierce that there was no hopes of putting a stop to it, and therefore no Attempts made to that end.

In this Condition it lay, till the Arrival of Colonel *Spotswood* their present Governor, in whose time it was raised again the same Bigness as before, and settled.

There had been a Donation of large Sums of Money, by the honourable *Robert Boyle* Esq; to this College for the Education of *Indian* Children therein: In order to make use of this, they had formerly bought half a Dozen captive *Indian* Children Slaves and put them to the College; this Method did not satisfy this Governor, as not answering the Intent of the Donor, so to work he goes among the tributary and other neighbouring *Indians*, and in a short time brought them to send their Children to be educated, and brought new Nations, some of which lived 400 Miles off, taking their Children for Hostages and Education equally, at the same time setting up a School in the Frontiers convenient to the *Indians*, that they might often see their Children under the first Managements, where they learnt to read, paying 50 *l. per Annum* out of his own Pocket to the School Master there, after which many were brought to the College, where they were taught till they grew big enough for their Hunting and other Exercises, at which time they were return'd Home, and smaller taken in their stead.

C H A P. IX.

Of the Militia in Virginia.

§. 45. **T**HE Militia are the only standing Forces in *Virginia*. They are happy in the Enjoyment of an everlasting Peace, which their Poverty and want of Towns secure to them. They have the *Indians* round about in Subjection, and have no sort of Apprehension from them: And for a Foreign Enemy, it can never be worth their while to carry Troops sufficient to conquer the Country; and the scattering Method of their Settlement, will not answer the Charge of an Expedition to plunder them: So that they feel none but the distant effect of War, which, however, keep 'em so poor, that they can boast of nothing but the Security of their Persons, and Habitations.

§. 46. The Governor is Lieutenant-General by his Commission, and in each County does appoint the Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major, who have under them Captains, and other commission'd and subaltern Officers.

Every Freeman, (by which Denomination they call all, but indentured, or bought Servants) from sixteen, to sixty Years of Age, is listed in the Militia; which by a Law, is to be mustered in a general Muster for each County, once a Year; and in single Troops and Companies, four times more at the least: Most People there are skilful in the use of Fire-Arms, being all their Lives accusom'd to shoot in the Woods. This, together with a

little exercising, would soon make the Militia useful.

§. 47. The exact Number of the Militia is not now known, there not being any Account of the Number taken of late Years, but I guess them at this time to be about 18,000 effective Men in all.

And whereas by the Practice of former Times upon the Militia Law, several People were oblig'd to travel sometimes 30 or 40 Miles to a private Muster of a Troop or Company, which was very burdensome to some, more than others, to answer only the same Duty; this Governor, just and regular in all his Conduct, and experienced to put his Designs in dividing Execution, so contrived, by the Counties into several Cantons or Military Districts, forming the Troops and Companies to each Canton, and appointing the Musterfields in the Center of each, that now throughout the whole Country, none are obliged to travel above ten Miles to a private Muster, and yet the Law put in due Execution.

§. 48. Instead of the Soldiers they formerly kept constantly in Forts, and of the others after them by the Name of Rangers, to scour the Frontiers clear of the *Indian* Enemy, they have by Law appointed the Militia to march out upon such Occasions, under the Command of the chief Officer of the County, where any Incurſion ſhall be notified. And if they upon ſuch Expedition remain in Arms three Days and upwards, they are then intitled to the Pay for the whole time; but if it prove a falſe Alarm, and they have no occaſion to continue out ſo long, they can demand nothing.

§. 49. The

§. 49. The Number of Soldiers in each Troop of Light-Horse, are from thirty to sixty, as the Convenience of the Canton will admit; and in a Company of Foot about fifty or sixty. A Troop or Company may be got together at a Day's warning.



CHAP. X.

Of the Servants and Slaves in Virginia.

§. 50. **T**Heir Servants they distinguish by the Names of Slaves for Life, and Servants for a time.

Slaves are the Negroes, and their Posterity, following the Condition of the Mother, according to the Maxim, *partus sequitur ventrem*. They are call'd Slaves, in Respect of the Time of their Servitude, because it is for Life.

Servants, are those which serve only for a few Years, according to the time of their Indenture, or the Custom of the Country. The Custom of the Country takes place upon such as have no Indentures. The Law in this Case is, that if such Servants be under nineteen Years of Age, they must be brought into Court, to have their Age adjudged; and from the Age they are judg'd to be of, they must serve until they reach four and twenty: But if they be adjudged upwards of nineteen, they are then only to be Servants for the Term of five Years.

§. 51. The Male-Servants, and Slaves of both Sexes, are employed together in tilling and manuring

nuring the Ground, in sowing and planting Tobacco, Corn, &c. Some Distinction indeed is made between them in their Cloaths, and Food; but the Work of both is no other than what the Overseers, the Freemen, and the Planters themselves do.

Sufficient Distinction is also made between the Female-Servants, and Slaves; for a white Woman is rarely or never put to work in the Ground, if she be good for any thing else: And to discourage all Planters from using any Women so, their Law makes Female-Servants working in the Ground Tithables, while it suffers all other white Women to be absolutely exempted: Whereas on the other hand, it is a common thing to work a Woman Slave out of Doors; nor does the Law make any Distinction in her Taxes, whether her Work be Abroad, or at Home.

§. 52. Because I have heard how strangely cruel, and severe, the Service of this Country is represented in some Parts of *England*; I can't forbear affirming, that the Work of their Servants and Slaves is no other than what every common Freeman does. Neither is any Servant requir'd to do more in a Day, than his Overseer. And I can assure you with great Truth, that generally their Slaves are not worked near so hard, nor so many Hours in a Day, as the Husbandmen, and Day-labourers in *England*. An Overseer is a Man, that having served his time, has acquired the Skill and Character of an experienced Planter, and is therefore intrusted with the Direction of the Servants and Slaves.

But to complete this Account of Servants, I shall give you a short Relation of the Care their Laws take, that they be used as tenderly as possible.

By

By the Laws of their Country.

1. All Servants whatsoever have their Complaints heard without Fee, or Reward; but if the Master be found faulty, the Charge of the Complaint is cast upon him, otherwise the Business is done *ex Officio*.

2. Any Justice of Peace may receive the Complaint of a Servant, and order every thing relating thereto, till the next County-Court, where it will be finally determin'd.

3. All Masters are under the Correction and Censure of the County-Courts, to provide for their Servants good and wholesome Diet, Clothing and Lodging.

4. They are always to appear upon the first notice given of the Complaint of their Servants, otherwise to forfeit the Service of them, until they do appear.

5. All Servants Complaints are to be receiv'd at any time in Court, without Process, and shall not be delay'd for want of Form; but the Merits of the Complaint must be immediately inquir'd into by the Justices; and if the Master cause any delay therein, the Court may remove such Servants, if they see Cause, until the Master will come to Trial.

6. If a Master shall at any time disobey an Order of Court made upon any Complaint of a Servant; the Court is impower'd to remove such Servant forthwith to another Master, who will be kinder; giving to the former Master the Produce only, (after Fees deducted) of what such Servants shall be sold for by publick Outcry.

7. If a Master should be so cruel, as to use his Servant ill, that is fain sick, or lame in his Service,

vice, and thereby render'd unfit for Labour, he must be remov'd by the Church-Wardens out of the way of such Cruelty, and boarded in some good Planter's House, till the time of his Freedom, the Charge of which must be laid before the next County-Court, which has Power to levy the same from time to time, upon the Goods and Chattels of the Master; after which, the Charge of such Boarding is to come upon the Parish in general.

8. All hired Servants are intituled to these Privileges.

9. No Master of a Servant can make a new Bargain for Service, or other Matter with his Servant, without the Privy and Consent of the County-Court, to prevent the Masters over-reaching, or scaring such Servant into an unreasonable Compliance.

10. The Property of all Money and Goods sent over thither to Servants, or carry'd in with them; is reserv'd to themselves, and remains intirely at their Disposal.

11. Each Servant at his Freedom receives of his Master ten Bushels of Corn, (which is sufficient for almost a Year) two new Suits of Cloaths, both Linen and Woollen, and a Gun 20 s. value, and then becomes as free in all Respects, and as much intituled to the Liberties and Privileges of the Country, as any other of the Inhabitants or Natives are, if such Servants were not Aliens.

12. Each Servant has then also a Right to take up fifty Acres of Land, where he can find any unpatented.

This is what the Laws prescribe in Favour of Servants, by which you may find, that the Cruelties and Severities imputed to that Country, are an unjust Reflection. For no People more abhor the thoughts of such Usage, than the *Virginians*,
nor

nor take more Precaution to prevent it now, whatever it was in former Days.



C H A P. XI.

Of the other publick charitable Works, and particularly, their Provision for the Poor.

§. 53. **T**HEY live in so happy a Climate, and have so fertile a Soil, that no Body is poor enough to beg, or want Food, though they have abundance of People that are lazy enough to deserve it. I remember the time, when five Pound was left by a charitable Testator, to the Poor of the Parish he lived in; and it lay nine Years, before the Executors could find one poor enough to accept of this Legacy; but at last it was given to an old Woman. So that this may in truth be term'd the best poor Man's Country in the World. But as they have no body that is poor to beggary, so they have few that are rich; their Estates being regulated by the Merchants in *England*, who it seems know best what is Profit enough for them, in the Sale of their Tobacco, and other Trade.

§. 54. When it happens, that by Accident or Sicknes, any Person is disabled from working, and so is forc'd to depend upon the Alms of the Parish, he is then very well provided for; not at the common Rate of some Countries, that give but just sufficient to preserve the Poor from perishing; but the unhappy Creature is receiv'd into some charitable Planter's House, where he is at the publick Charge boarded plentifully.

Many when they are cripled, or by long Sick-
ness become poor, will sometimes ask to be free
from Levies and Taxes; but very few others do
ever ask for the Parish-Alms, or indeed so much
as stand in need of them.

§. 55. There are large Tracts of Land, Houses,
and other things granted to Free-Schools, for the
Education of Children in many Parts of the
Country; and some of these are so large, that of
themselves they are a handsom Maintenance to a
Master: But the additional Allowance, which
Gentlemen give with their Sons, render them a
comfortable Subsistence. These Schools have been
founded by the Legacies of well inclin'd Gentle-
men, and the Management of them hath com-
monly been left to the Direction of the County-
Court, or to the Vestry of the respective Parishes.
In all other Places, where such Indowments have
not been already made, the People join, and build
Schools for their Children, where they may learn
upon very easie Terms.



C H A P. XII.

*Of the Tenure by which they hold their Lands ;
and of their Grants.*

§. 56. **T**HE Tenure of their Land there is free
and common Soccage, according to Cu-
stom of *East-Greenwich*; and is created by Letters
Patents, issuing under the Seal of the Colony, and
under the Test of the Governor in Chief for the
time being; I don't find, that the Name of any
other

other Officer is necessary, to make the Patent valid.

§. 57. There are three Ways of obtaining from his Majesty a Title to Land there, *viz.* *First*, By taking a Patent upon a Survey of new Land. *Secondly*, By Petition for Land lapsed. *Thirdly*, By Petition for Land escheated. The Conditions of the two former, are the Entry of Rights; the Condition of the third, a Composition of two Pounds of Tobacco for every Acre.

§. 58. A Right is a Title any one hath by the Royal Charter to fifty Acres of Land, in Consideration of his personal Transportation into that Country, to settle and remain there; by this Rule also, a Man that removes his Family, is intituled to the same Number of Acres, for his Wife, and each of his Children; a Right may be also obtain'd by paying five Shillings, according to a late Royal Instruction to the Government.

§. 59. A Patent upon Land for Survey, is acquired thus. *First*, the Man proves his Rights; that is, he makes Oath in Court, of the Importation of so many Persons, with a List of their Names. This List is then certified by the Clerk of that Court to the Clerk of the Secretary's Office; who examines into the Validity of them, and files them in that Office, attesting them to be regular, or he purchases them at five Shillings each as aforesaid. When the Rights are thus obtained, they are produced to the Surveyor of the County, and the Land is shewed to him; who thereupon is bound to make the Survey, if the Land had not been patented before. These Rights to Land are as commonly sold by one Man to another, as the Land it self;

self; so that any one, not having Rights by his own Importation, may have them by Purchase.

It is the Business of the Surveyor also, to take care that the Bounds of his Survey be plainly marked, either by natural Boundaries, or else by chopping Notches in the Trees, that happen in the Lines of his Courses: But this is done at the Charge of the Man that employs him.

This Survey being made, a Copy thereof is carried, with a Certificate of Rights to the Secretary's Office, and there (if there be no Objection) a Patent of course is made out upon it, which is presented to the Governor and Council for them to pass; the Patentee having no more to do, but to send for it when it is perfected, and to pay the Fee, at the first Crop, to the Sheriff of the County, by whom annually the Fees are collected.

This Patent gives an Estate in Fee-simple, upon Condition of paying a Quit-Rent of twelve Pence for every fifty Acres, and of planting or seating thereon, within three Years, according to their Law; that is, to clear, plant, and tend three Acres of Ground for every fifty, and to build an House, and keep a Stock of Cattle, Sheep, or Goats, in Proportion to the meaner Part of the Land in the Patent.

§. 60. Lapsed Land, is when any one having obtain'd a Patent as before, doth not set or plant thereon within three Years, as the Condition of the Patent requires; but leaves it still all or part uninhabited, and uncultivated: In such Case it is said to be lapsed, and any Man is at liberty to obtain a new Patent in his own Name of so much as is lapsed, the Method of acquiring which Patent is thus.

The Party must apply himself by Petition to the general Court, another to the Governor, setting forth all the Circumstances of the Lapse. If this Petition be allow'd, the Court makes an Order, to certify the same to the Governor, in whose Breast it is then to make a new Grant thereof to such Person if he thinks they deserve it, upon the same condition, of setting or planting within three Years, as was in the former Patent. Thus Land may be lapsed or lost several times, by the Negligence of the Patentees; who, by such Omission, lose not only the Land, but all their Rights and Charges into the Bargain.

But if within the three Years after the Date of the Patent, or before any new Petition is prefer'd for it, the Patentee shall set or plant the said Land, as the Law directs; it cannot afterwards be forfeited, but by Attainder, or Escheat, in which case it returns to his Majesty again.

Also when it happens, that the Patentee dies within the three Years, leaving the Heir under Age, there is farther time given the Heir after he comes of Age to set and save such Land.

§. 61. When Land is suggested to Escheat, the Governor issues his Warrant to the Escheator, to make Inquest thereof: And when upon such Inquest, Office is found for the King, it must be recorded in the Secretary's Office, and there kept nine Months, to see if any Person will lay claim to it, or can traverse the Escheat. If any such appear, upon his Petition to the general Court he is heard, before any Grant can be made. If no Person oppose the Inquest, the Land is given to the Man that shews the best equitable Right thereto; and if there be none such, it is then granted to any one, that the Governor and Council shall think
fit,

fit, the Grantee always paying two Pounds of Tobacco *per* Acre into the Treasury of the Country, as a Fine of Composition with his Majesty for his Escheat : And thereupon a Patent issues reciting Premises.



C H A P. XIII.

Of the Liberties and Naturalization of Aliens in Virginia.

§. 62. **C**Hristians of all Nations have equal Freedom there, and upon their Arrival become *ipso facto* entituled to all the Liberties and Privileges of the Country, provided they take the Oaths of Obedience to the Crown and Government, and obtain the Governor's Testimonial thereof.

The Method of obtaining Naturalization is thus ; the Party desiring it goes before the Governor, and tenders his Oath of Allegiance, which the Governor thereupon administers, and immediately makes Certificate of it under the Seal of the Colony. By this means, the Person alien is completely naturalized to all Intents and Purposes.

§. 63. The *French* Refugees sent in thither by the charitable Exhibition of his late Majesty King *William*, are naturalized, by a particular Law for that purpose.

In the Year 1699, there went over about three hundred of these, and the Year following about two hundred more, and so on, till there arrived in all between seven and eight hundred Men, Women

men and Children, who had fled from *France* on account of their Religion.

Those who went over the first Year, were advised to seat on a piece of very rich Land, about twenty Miles above the Falls of *James River*, on the *South* side of the River; which Land was formerly the Seat of a great and warlike Nation of *Indians*, called the *Monacàns*, none of which are now left in those Parts; but the Land still retains their Name; and is call'd the *Monacàn Town*.

The Refugees that arriv'd the second Year, went also first to the *Monacàn Town*, but afterwards upon some Disagreement, several dispers'd themselves up and down the Country; and those that have arriv'd since, have follow'd their Example, except some few, that settled likewise at the *Monacàn Town*.

The Assembly was very bountiful to those who remain'd at this Town, bestowing on them large Donations, Money, and Provisions for their Support; they likewise freed them from every publick Tax, for several Years to come, and address'd the Governor to grant them a Brief, to entitle them to the Charity of all well dispos'd Persons throughout the Country; which together with the King's Benevolence, supported them very comfortably, till they could sufficiently supply themselves with Necessaries, which now they do indifferently well, and have Stocks of Cattle and Hogs.

The Year 1702, they began an Essay of Wine, which they made of the wild Grapes gather'd in the Woods; the effect of which was a strong bodied Claret, of good Flavour. I heard a Gentleman, who tast'd it, give it great Commendation. Now if such may be made of the wild Vine in the Woods, without pruning, weeding, or removing
it

it out of the Shade, what may not be produc'd from a Vineyard skilfully cultivated? But I don't hear that they have done any thing since towards it, being still very poor, needy, and negligent.



C H A P. XIV.

Of the Currency and Valuation of Coins in Virginia.

§. 64. **T**HE Coin which chiefly they have among them, is either Gold, of the Stamp of *Arabia*, or Silver and Gold, of the Stamp of *France*, *Portugal* or the *Spanish America*: *Spanish*, *French* and *Portuguese* coin'd Silver is settled by Law at three Pence three Farthings the Penny Weight. Gold of the same Coin, and of *Arabia*, at five Shillings the Penny Weight. *English* Guineas at twenty six Shillings each, and the Silver two Pence in every Shilling advance, *English* old Coin goes by Weight, as the other Gold and Silver.





O F T H E

Husbandry and Improvements

O F

V I R G I N I A.

P A R T II.

C H A P. XV.

Of the People, Inhabitants of Virginia.

§. 65.



Can easily imagin with Sir *Joseph Child*, that this, as well as all the rest of the Plantations, was for the most part at first peopled by Persons of low Circumstances, and by such as were willing to seek their Fortunes in a Foreign Country. Nor was it hardly possible it should be otherwise; for 'tis not likely that any Man of a plentiful Estate should voluntarily abandon a happy Certainty, to roam after imaginary Advantages, in a new World. Besides

sides which Uncertainty, he must have propos'd to himself to encounter the infinite Difficulties and Dangers that attend a new Settlement. These Discouragements were sufficient to terrify any Man, that could live easy in *England*, from going to provoke his Fortune in a strange Land.

§. 66. Those that went over to that Country first, were chiefly single Men, who had not the Incumbrance of Wives and Children in *England*; and if they had, they did not expose them to the Fatigue and Hazard of so long a Voyage, until they saw how it should fare with themselves. From hence it came to pass, that when they were settled there in a comfortable way of subsisting a Family, they grew sensible of the Misfortune of wanting Wives, and such as had left Wives in *England*, sent for them; but the single Men were put to their Shifts. They excepted against the *Indian Women*, on account of their being *Pagans*, as well as their Complexions, and for Fear they should conspire with those of their own Nation, to destroy their Husbands. Under this Difficulty they had no Hopes, but that the Plenty in which they liv'd, might invite modest Women, of small Fortunes, to go over thither from *England*. However, they would not receive any, but such as could carry sufficient Certificate of their Modesty and good Behaviour. Those, if they were but moderately qualified in all other Respects, might depend upon marrying very well in those Days, without any Fortune. Nay, the first Planters were so far from expecting Money with a Woman, that 'twas a common thing for them to buy a deserving Wife, that carried good Testimonials of her Character, at the price of 100 Pound, and make themselves believe they had a Bargain.

§. 67. But this way of Peopling the Colony was only at first; for after the Advantages of the Climate, and the Fruitfulness of the Soil were well known, and all the Dangers incident to Infant Settlements were over, People of better Condition retir'd thither with their Families, either to increase the Estates they had before, or else to avoid being persecuted for their Principles of Religion, or Government.

Thus in the time of the Rebellion in *England*, several good Cavalier Families went thither with their Effects, to escape the Tyranny of the Usurper, or Acknowledgement of his Title. And so again, upon the Restoration, many People of the opposite Party took Refuge there, to shelter themselves from the King's Resentment. But *Virginia* had not many of these last, because that Country was famous for holding out the longest for the Royal Family, of any of the *English* Dominions; for which reason, the Roundheads went for the most part to *New-England*, as did most of those, that in the Reign of King *Charles II.* were molested on the Account of their Religion, though some of these fell likewise to the Share of *Virginia*. As for Malefactors condemn'd to Transportation, tho' the greedy Planter will always buy them, yet 'it is to be fear'd they will be very injurious to the Country, which has already suffer'd many Murthers and Robberies, the Effects of that new Law of *England*.

C H A P. XVI.

Of the Buildings of Virginia.

§. 68. **T**Here are three fine public Buildings in this Country, which are said to be the most magnificent of any in the *English America* :

R

One

One of which is the College before spoken of, another the Capitol or State-House, as it was formerly call'd: That is, the House for Convention of the General Assembly, for the Sitting of the General Court, for the Meeting of the Council, and for keeping of their several Offices, belonging to them.

Not far from this, is also built the public Prison of the Country for Criminals, which is a large and convenient Structure, with Partitions for the different Sexes, and distinct Rooms for Petty-Offenders. To this is also annexed a convenient Yard to air the Criminals in, for Preservation of their Life and Health, till the time of their Trial; and at the End of that, another Prison for Debtors.

The third is a House for the Governor, not the largest, but by far the most beautiful of all the other. It was granted by the Assembly in Governor *Nott's* time, begun in President *Jenings* his time, but received its Beauty and Conveniency, for the many Alterations and Decorations, of the present Governor Colonel *Spotswood*: Who, to the lasting Honour and Happiness of the Country, arrived there, while this House was carrying up.

In his time was also built a new Brick Church, and Brick Magazine for Arms and Ammunition: and the Streets of the Town altered from the fanciful Forms of W^s. and M^s. to much more Conveniencies.

These are all erected at Middle-plantation, now nam'd *Williamsburgh*, where Land is laid out for a Town. They all are built of Brick, and cover'd with Shingle, except the Debtors Prison which is flat roofed anew; a very useful Invention of the present Governor also.

§. 69. The private Buildings are also in his time very much improved; several Gentlemen there, having built themselves large Brick Houses of many
Rooms

Rooms on a Floor; but they don't covet to make them lofty, having Extent enough of Ground to build upon; and now and then they are visited by high Winds, which would incommode a towering Fabrick. They love to have large Rooms, that they may be cool in Summer. Of late they have made their Stories much higher than formerly, and their Windows larger, and fast with Crystal Glafs; adorning their Apartments with rich Furniture.

All their Drudgeries of Cookery, Washing, Dairies, &c. are perform'd in Offices apart from the Dwelling-houses, which by this means are kept more cool and sweet.

Their Tobacco-Houses are all built of Wood, as open and airy as is consistent with keeping out the Rain; which sort of Building is most convenient for the curing of their Tobacco.

Their common Covering for Dwelling-Houses is Shingle, which is an oblong Square of Cypress or Pine-wood; but they cover their Tobacco-Houses with thin Clap-board; and tho' they have Slate enough in some particular parts of the Country, and as strong Clay as can be desired for making of Tile, yet they have very few tiled Houses; neither has any one yet thought it worth his while to dig up the Slate, which will hardly be made use of, till the Carriage there becomes cheaper, and more common; the Slate lying far up the Frontiers above Water-carriage.



C H A P. XVII.

Of the Edibles, Potables, and Fuel in Virginia.

§. 70. **T**HE Families being altogether on Country-Seats, they have their Graziers, Seedsmen, Gardeners, Brewers, Bakers, Butchers,

and Cooks within themselves: They have Plenty and Variety of Provisions for their Table; and as for Spicery, and other things that the Country don't produce, they have constant Supplies of them from *England*. The Gentry pretend to have their Victuals dress'd, and serv'd up as nicely, as if they were in *London*.

§. 71. When I come to speak of their Cattle, I can't forbear charging my Country-men with exceeding Ill-Husbandry, in not providing sufficiently for them all Winter, by which means they starve their young Cattle, or at least stint their Growth; so that they seldom or never grow so large as they would do, if they were well manag'd; for the humour is there, if People can but save the Lives of their Cattle, tho' they suffer them to be never so poor in the Winter, yet they will presently grow fat again in the Spring, which they esteem sufficient for their purpose. And this is the Occasion, that their Beef and Mutton are seldom or never so large, or so fat as in *England*: And yet with the least Feeding imaginable, they are put into as good Case as can be desired; and it is the same with their Hogs.

Their Fish is in vast Plenty and Variety, and extraordinary good in their kind. Beef and Pork are commonly sold there, from one Penny, to two Pence the Pound, or more, according to the time of Year; their fattest and largest Poulets at Six-pence a piece; their Capons at eight-pence or nine-pence a-piece; their Chickens at three or four Shillings the Dozen; their Ducks at eight-pence, or nine-pence a-piece; their Geese at ten-pence or a Shilling; their Turkey-Hens at fifteen or eighteen pence; and their Turkey-Cocks at two Shillings or half a Crown. But Oysters and Wild-Fowl are not so dear, as the things I have reckon'd
 2 before,

before, being in their Season the cheapest Victuals they have. Their Deer are commonly sold from five to ten Shillings according to the Scarcity and Goodness.

§. 72. The Bread in Gentlemen's Houses, is generally made of Wheat, but some rather choose the Pone, which is the Bread made of *Indian* Meal. Many of the poorer sort of People so little regard the *English* Grain, that though they might have it with the least Trouble in the World, yet they don't mind to sow the Ground, because they won't be at the trouble of making a Fence particularly for it. And therefore their constant Bread is Pone, not so called from the Latin *Panis*, but from the *Indian* Name *Oppone*.

§. 73. A Kitchen-Garden don't thrive better or faster in any part of the Universe, than there. They have all the Culinary Plants that grow in *England*, and in greater Perfection, than in *England*: Besides these, they have several Roots, Herbs, Vine-fruits, and Sallad-flowers peculiar to themselves, most of which will neither increase, nor grow to Perfection in *England*. These they dish up various ways, and find them very delicious Sauce to their Meats, both roast and boil'd, fresh and salt; such are the *Indian* Cresses, Red-buds, Saffraas-flowers, Cymnells, Melons, and Potatoes, whereof I have spoken at large in the 4th Chapter of the second Book, §. 20.

It is said of *New-England*, that several Plants will not grow there, which thrive well in *England*, such as Rue, Southernwood, Rosemary, Bays, and Lavender: And that others degenerate, and will not continue above a Year or two at the most; such are July-Flowers, Fennel, Enula Campana, Clary, and Bloodwort: But I don't know

any *English* Plant, Grain, or Fruit, that miscarries in *Virginia*; but most of them better their Kinds very much, by being sowed or planted there. It was formerly said of the Red-top Turnip, that there in three or four Years time, it degenerated into Rape; but that happen'd merely by an Error in saving the Seed; for now it appears, that if they cut off the Top of such a Turnip, that has been kept out of the Ground all the Winter, and plant that Top alone without the Body of the Root, it yields a Seed which mends the Turnip in the next Sowing.

§. 74. Their Small-drink is either Wine and Water, Beer, Milk and Water, or Water alone. Their richer sort generally brew their Small-Beer with Malt, which they have from *England*, though Barley grows there very well; but for want of the Convenience of Malthouses, the Inhabitants take no Care to sow it. The poorer Sort brew their Beer with Molasses and Bran; with *Indian* Corn malted by drying in a Stove; with Persimmons dried in Cakes, and baked; with Potatoes; with the green Stalks of *Indian* Corn cut small, and bruised; with Pompions; and with the *Batates Canadensis*, or *Jerusalem Artichoke*, which some People plant purposely for that use; but this is the least esteem'd, of all the Sorts before mention'd.

Their strong Drink is *Madera* Wine, Cyder, Mobby Punch, made either of Rum from the *Caribbee* Islands, or Brandy distill'd from their Apples and Peaches; besides *Brandy*, Wine, and strong Beer, which they have constantly from *England*.

§. 75. Their Fewel is altogether Wood, which every Man burns at Pleasure, it being no other Charge to him, than the cutting and carrying it Home.

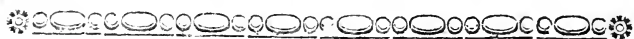
Home. In all new Grounds it is such an Incumbrance, that they are forced to burn great Heaps of it, to rid the Land. They have very good Pit-Coal (as is formerly mention'd) in several Places of the Country ; but no Man has yet thought it worth his while to make use of them, having Wood in Plenty, and lying more convenient for him.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Clothing in Virginia.

§. 76. **T**HEY have their Clothing of all sorts from *England*, as Linen, Woollen, Silk, Hats, and Leather : Yet Flax, and Hemp grow no where in the World better than there. Their Sheep yield good Increase, and bear good Fleeces; but they shear them only to cool them. The Mulberry-Tree, whose Leaf is the proper Food of the Silk-Worm, grows there like a Weed, and Silk-worms have been observ'd to thrive extremely, and without any Hazard. The very Furs that their Hats are made of, perhaps go first from thence; and most of their Hides lie and rot, or are made use of only for covering dry Goods, in a leaky House. Indeed some few Hides with much ado are tan'd, and made into Servants Shoes; but at so careless a Rate, that the Planters don't care to buy them, if they can get others; and sometimes perhaps a better Manager than ordinary, will vouchsafe to make a pair of Breeches of a Deer-Skin. Nay, they are such abominable Ill-husbands, that tho' their Country be over-run with Wood, yet they have all their wooden Ware from

England; their Cabinets, Chairs, Tables, Stools, Chests, Boxes, Cart-Wheels, and all other things, even so much as their Bowls, and Birchen Brooms, to the Eternal Reproach of their Laziness.



C H A P. XIX.

Of the Temperature of the Climate, and the Inconveniencies attending it.

§. 77. **T**HE Natural Temperature of the Inhabited part of the Country, is hot and moist: tho' this Moisture I take to be occasion'd by the Abundance of low Grounds, Marshes, Creeks and Rivers, which are every where among their lower Settlements; but more backward in the Woods, where they are now seating, and making new Plantations, they have abundance of high and dry Land, where there are only Crystal Streams of Water, which flow gently from their Springs, in innumerable Branches, to moisten and enrich the adjacent Lands, and where a Fog is rarely seen.

§. 78. The Country is in a very happy Situation, between the extremes of Heat and Cold, but inclining rather to the first. Certainly it must be a happy Climate, since it is very near of the same Latitude with the Land of Promise. Besides, as the Land of Promise was full of Rivers, and Branches of Rivers; so is *Virginia*: As that was seated upon a great Bay and Sea, wherein were all the Conveniencies for Shipping and Trade; so is *Virginia*. Had that Fertility of Soil? So has *Virginia*, equal to any Land in the known World.

In fine, if any one impartially considers all the Advantages of this Country, as Nature made it; he must allow it to be as fine a Place, as any in the Universe; but I confess I am asham'd to say any thing of its Improvements, because I must at the same time reproach my Countrymen with unpardonable Sloth. If there be any Excuse for them in this Matter, 'tis the exceeding Plenty of good things, with which Nature has blest them; for where God Almighty is so merciful as to give Plenty and Ease, People easily forget their Duty.

All the Countries in the World, seated in or near the Latitude of *Virginia*, are esteem'd the fruitfullest and pleasantest of all Climates. As for Example, *Canaan, Syria, Persia*, great part of *India, China* and *Japan*, the *Morea, Spain, Portugal*, and the Coast of *Barbary*, none of which differ many Degrees of Latitude from *Virginia*. These are reckon'd the Gardens of the World, while *Virginia* is unjustly neglected by its own Inhabitants, and abus'd by other People.

§. 79. That which makes this Country most unfortunate, is, that it must submit to receive its Character from the Mouths not only of unfit, but very unequal Judges; for all its Reproaches happen after this manner.

Many of the Merchants and others, that go thither from *England*, make no Distinction between a cold and a hot Country; but wisely go sweltering about in their thick Cloaths all the Summer, because forsooth they used to do so in their *Northern* Climate; and then unfairly complain of the Heat of the Country. They greedily surfeit with their delicious Fruits, and are guilty of great Intemperance therein, through the exceeding Plenty thereof, and Liberty given by the Inhabitants; by which means they fall sick, and then unjustly complain

plain of the Unhealthiness of the Country. In the nett place, the Sailers for want of Towns there, were put to the Hardship of rowling most of the Tobacco, a Mile or more, to the Water-side; this splinters their Hands sometimes, and provokes them to curse the Country. Such Exercise and a bright Sun made them hot, and then they imprudently fell to drinking cold Water, or perhaps new Cyder, which, in its Season they found in every Planter's House; or else they greedily devour'd the green Fruit, and unripe Trash they met with, and so fell into Fluxes, Fevers, and the Belly-Ach; and then, to spare their own Indiscretion, they in their Tarpawlin Language, cry, God D——m the Country. This is the true State of the Case, as to the Complaints of its being sickly; for, by the most impartial Observation I can make, if People will be persuaded to be temperate, and take due Care of themselves, I believe it is as healthy a Country, as any under Heaven: But the extraordinary Pleasantness of the Weather, and Plenty of the Fruit, lead People into many Temptations. The Clearness and Brightness of the Sky, add new Vigor to their Spirits, and perfectly remove all splenetick and sullen Thoughts. Here they enjoy all the Benefits of a warm Sun, and by their shady Trees are protected from its Inconvenience. Here all their Senses are entertain'd with an endless Succession of Native Pleasures. Their Eyes are ravished with the Beauties of naked Nature. Their Ears are serenaded with the perpetual Murmur of Brooks, and the thorough-bass which the Wind plays, when it wantons through the Trees; the merry Birds too, join their pleasing Notes to this rural Consort, especially the Mock-birds, who love Society so well, that often when they see Mankind, they will perch upon a Twig very near them,

them, and sing the sweetest wild Airs in the World. But what is most remarkable in these melodious Animals, if they see a Man takes Notice of them, they will frequently flie at small Distances, warbling out their Notes from Perch to Perch, be it House or Tree convenient, and sometimes too fly up, to light on the same again, and by their Musick, make a Man forget the Fatigues of his Mind. Men's Taste is regaled with the most delicious Fruits, which without Art, they have in great Variety and Perfection. And then their Smell is refreshed with an eternal Fragrancy of Flowers and Sweets, with which Nature perfumes and adorns the Woods and Branches almost the whole Year round.

Have you Pleasure in a Garden? All things thrive in it most surprisingly; you can't walk by a Bed of Flowers, but besides the Entertainment of their Beauty, your Eyes will be saluted with the charming Colours and Curiosity of the humming Bird, which revels among the Flowers, and licks off the Dew and Honey from their tender Leaves, on which it only feeds. Its Size is not half so large as an *English* Wren, and its Colour is a glorious shining Mixture of Scarlet, Green and Gold.

§. 80. On the other side, all the Annoyances and Inconveniencies of the Country, may fairly be summed up, under these three Heads, Thunder, Heat, and troublesome Vermine.

I confess, in the hottest part of the Summer, they have sometimes very loud and surprizing Thunder, but rarely any Damage happens by it. On the contrary, it is of such Advantage to the cooling and refining of the Air, that it is oftner wished for, than fear'd. But they have no Earthquakes, which the *Caribbee* Islands are so much troubled with.

Their

Their Heat is very seldom troublesome, and then only by the Accident of a perfect Calm, which happens perhaps two or three times in a Year, and lasts but a few Hours at a time; and even that Inconvenience is made easie by cool Shades, open airy Rooms, Summer-houses, Arbors, and Grottos: But the Spring and Fall afford as pleasant Weather, as *Mahomet* promis'd in his Paradise.

All the troublesome Vermine, that ever I heard any Body complain of, are either Frogs, Snakes, Musketæ's, Chinchies, Seed-ticks, or Red-worms, by some call'd Potato-lice. Of all which I shall give an Account in their Order.

Some People have been so ill inform'd, as to say, that *Virginia* is full of Toads, though there never yet was seen one Toad in it. The Marshes, Fens, and watery Grounds, are indeed full of harmless Frogs which do no Hurt, except by the Noise of their croaking Notes: But in the upper parts of the Country, where the Land is high and dry, they are very scarce. In these Swamps and running Streams, they have Frogs of an incredible Bigness, which are called Bull-frogs, from the Roaring they make. Last Year I found one of these near a Stream of fresh Water, of so prodigious a Magnitude, that when I extended its Legs, I found the distance betwixt them, to be seventeen Inches and an half. If any are good to eat, these must be the Kind.

Some People in *England*, are startled at the very Name of the Rattle-Snake, and fancy every Corner of that Province so much pester'd with them, that a Man goes in constant Danger of his Life, that walks abroad in the Woods. But this is as gross a Mistake, as most of the other ill Reports of this Country. For in the first place, this Snake is very rarely seen; and when that happens, it never does the least Mischiefe, unless you offer

to disturb it, and thereby provoke it to bite in its own Defence. But it never fails to give you fair Warning, by making a Noise with its Rattle, which may be heard at a convenient distance. For my own part I have travelled the Country as much as any Man in it of my Age, by Night and by Day, above the Inhabitants, as well as among them; and yet before the first Impression of this Book I had never seen a Rattle-Snake alive, and at liberty, in all my Life. I had seen them indeed after they had been killed, or pent up in Boxes to be sent to *England*. The Bite of this Viper without some immediate Application is certainly Death; but Remedies are so well known, that none of their Servants are ignorant of them. I never knew any kill'd by these, or any other of their Snakes, although I had a general Knowledge all over the Country, and had been in every part of it. They have several other Snakes which are seen more frequently, and have very little or no Hurt in them, *viz.* such as they call Black-Snakes, Water-Snakes, and Corn-Snakes. The black Viper-Snake, and the Copper-bellied Snake, are said to be as venomous as the Rattle-Snake, but they are as seldom seen; these three poisonous Snakes bring forth their young alive, whereas the other three sorts lay Eggs, which are hatched afterwards; and that is the Distinction they make, esteeming only those to be venomous, which are viviparous. They have likewise the Horn-Snake, so called from a sharp Horn it carries in its Tail, with which it assaults any thing that offends it, with that Force, that as it is said it will strike its Tail into the But-end of a Musquet, from whence it is not able to disengage it self.

All sorts of Snakes will charm both Birds and Squirrels, and the *Indians* pretend to charm them. Several Persons have seen Squirrels run down a

Tree

Tree directly into a Snake's Mouth; they have likewise seen Birds fluttering up and down, and chattering at these Snakes, till at last they have dropt down just before them.

In the End of *May*, 1715, stopping at an Orchard by the Road-side to get some Cherries, being three of us in Company, we were entertain'd with the whole Process of a Charm between a Rattle-Snake and a Hare, the Hare being better than half grown. It happened thus; One of the Company in his Search for the best Cherries espied the Hare sitting, and altho' he went close by her she did not move, till he (not suspecting the occasion of her Gentleness) gave her a Lash with his Whip; this made her run about ten Foot, and there sit down again. The Gentleman not finding the Cherries ripe immediately return'd the same Way, and near the place where he struck the Hare, he spied a Rattle-Snake; still not suspecting the Charm, he goes back about twenty Yards to a Hedge to get a Stick to kill the Snake, and at his Return found the Snake removed, and coild in the same Place from whence he had moved the Hare. This put him into immediate Thoughts of looking for the Hare again, and he soon spied her about ten Foot off the Snake, in the same Place to which she had started when he whipt her. She was now lying down, but would sometimes raise her self on her Fore-feet strugling as it were for Life or to get away, but could never raise her hinder parts from the Ground, and then would fall flat on her side again, panting vehemently. In this condition the Hare and Snake were when he called me: and though we all three came up within fifteen Foot of the Snake to have a full View of the whole, he took no notice at all of us, nor so much as gave a Glance towards us. There we stood at least half an Hour, the Snake not altering a Jot, but the Hare often
strugling

struggling and falling on its side again, till at last the Hare lay still as dead for some time. Then the Snake mov'd out of his Coil, and slid gently and smoothly on towards the Hare, his Colours at that instant being ten times more glorious and shining than at other times. As the Snake mov'd along, the Hare happen'd to fetch another Struggle, upon which the Snake made a stop lying at his Length, till the Hare had lain quiet again for a short Space; and then he advanced again till he came up to the hinder parts of the Hare, which in all this Operation had been towards the Snake; there he made a Survey all over the Hare, raising part of his Body above it, then turn'd off and went to the Head and Nose of the Hare, after that to the Ears, took the Ears in his Mouth one after the other, working each apart in his Mouth as a Man does a Wafer to moisten it, then return'd to the Nose again, and took the Face into his Mouth, straining and gathering his Lips sometimes by one side of his Mouth, sometimes by the other: at the Shoulders he was a long time puzzled, often haling and stretching the Hare out at length, and straining forward first one side of his Mouth then the other, till at last he got the whole Body into his Throat. Then we went to him, and taking the Twist-Band off from my Hat, I made a Noose and put it about his Neck. This made him at length very furious, but we having secured him, put him into one End of a Wallet, and carried him on Horse-back five Miles to Mr. *John Baylor's* House where we lodged that Night, with a Design to have sent him to Doctor *Cock* at *Williamsburgh*; but Mr. *Baylor* was so careful of his Slaves that he would not let him be put into his Boat for fear he should get loose and mischief them; therefore the next Morning we killed him, and took the Hare out of his Belly, the Head of the Hare began to be

be

be digested and the Hair falling off, having lain about eighteen Hours in the Snake's Belly.

I thought this Account of such a Curiosity would be acceptable, and the rather because tho' I live in a Country where such things are said frequently to happen, yet I never could have any satisfactory Account of a Charm, tho' I have met with several Persons who have pretended to have seen 'em. Some also pretend that those sort of Snakes influence Children, and even Men and Women, by their Charms. But this that I have related of my own View, I aver (for the Satisfaction of the learned) to be punctually true, without enlarging or wavering in any respect, upon the Faith of a Christian.

In my Youth I was a Bear-hunting in the Woods above the Inhabitants, and having straggled from my Companions, I was entertained at my Return, with the Relation of a pleasant Rencontre, between a Dog and a Rattle Snake, about a Squirrel. The Snake had got the Head and Shoulders of the Squirrel into his Mouth, which being something too large for his Throat, it took him up some time to moisten the Fur of the Squirrel with his Spawl, to make it slip down. The Dog took this Advantage, seiz'd the hinder parts of the Squirrel, and tug'd with all his Might. The Snake on the other side would not let go his Hold for a long time, till at last, fearing he might be bruised by the Dog's running away with him, he gave up his Prey to the Dog, the Dog eat the Squirrel, and felt no Harm.

Another Curiosity concerning this Viper, which I never met with in print, I will also relate from my own Observation.

Some time after my Observation of the Charm, my waiting Boy being sent abroad on an Errand also, took upon himself to bring home a Rattle-Snake in a Noose. I cut off the Head of this
Snake

Snake, leaving about an Inch of the Neck with it; this I laid upon the Head of a Tobacco Hog-head, one *Stephen Lankford* a Carpenter, now alive, being with me. Now you must note, that these Snakes have but two Teeth, by which they convey their Poison, and they are placed in the upper Jaw, pretty forward in the Mouth, one on each side; these Teeth are hollow and crooked like a Cock's Spur; they are also loose or springing in the Mouth, and not fastned in the Jaw-bone as all the other Teeth are; the hollow has a vent also through by a small Hole a little below the Point of the Tooth; these two Teeth are kept lying down along the Jaw, or shut like a Spring-knife, and dont shrink up as the Talons of a Cat or Panther; they have also over them a lose thin Film or Skin of a Flesh-Colour, which rises over them when they are raised, which I take to be only at the Will of the Snake to do Injury; this Skin does not break by the rising of the Tooth only, but keeps whole till the Bite is given, and then is pierced by the Tooth, by which the Poison is let out. The Head being laid upon the Hoghead, I took two little Twigs or Splinters of Sticks, and having turn'd the Head upon its Crown, open'd the Mouth, and lifted up the Fang or springing Tooth on one side several times, in doing of which I at last broke the Skin; the Head gave a sudden Champ with its Mouth, breaking from my Sticks, in which I observed that the Poison ran down in a Lump like Oyl, round the Root of the Tooth. Then I turn'd the other side of the Head, and resolved to be more careful to keep the Mouth open on the like occasion, and observe more narrowly the Consequence; for it is observed, that tho' the Heads of Snakes, Terrapins and such like Vermine be cut off, yet the Body will not die in a long time after; the general Saying, is till the Sun sets. After opening the Mouth

on the other side, and lifting up that Fang also several times, he endeavoured to give another Bite or Champ; but I kept his Mouth open, and the Tooth pierced the Film and emitted a Stream like one full of Blood in Blood-letting, and cast some Drops upon the Sleeve of the Carpenter's Shirt, who had no Waistcoat on. I advised him to pull off his Shirt, but he would not, and received no Harm; and tho' nothing could then be seen of it upon the Shirt, yet in washing there appeared five green Specks, which every washing appeared plainer and plainer, and lasted so long as the Shirt did, which the Carpenter told me was about three Years after. The Head we threw afterwards down upon the Ground, and a Sow came and eat it before our Faces; and received no Harm. Now I believe, had this Poison lighted upon any Place of the Carpenter's Skin, that was scratched or hurt, it might have poisoned him. I take the Poison to rest in a small Bag or Receptacle in the hollow at the Root of these Teeth; but I never had the Opportunity afterwards to make a farther Discovery of that.

I will likewise give you a Story of the violent effects of this sort of Poison, because I depend upon the Truth of it, having it from an Acquaintance of mine of good Credit, one Colonel *James Taylor* of *Metapony* still alive: he being with others in the Woods a surveying, just as they were standing to light their Pipes, they found a Rattle-Snake and cut off his Head, and about three Inches of the Body; then he with a green Stick which he had in his Hand, about a foot and a half long, the Bark being newly pill'd off, urged and provoked the Head, till it bit the Stick in Fury, several times. Upon this the Colonel observed small green Streaks to rise up along the Stick towards his Hand; he threw the Stick upon the Ground, and in a Quar-

ter

ter of an Hour, the Stick of its own Accord split into several Peices, and fell asunder from end to end. This Account I had from him again, at the writing hereof.

Musketaes are a sort of Vermin, of less Danger, but much more troublesome, because more frequent. They are a long-tail'd Gnat, such as are in all Fens, and low Grounds in *England*, and I think, have no other Difference from them than the Name. Neither are they in *Virginia* troubled with them any, where but in their low Grounds, and Marshes. These Insects I believe are stronger, and continue longer there, by reason of the warm Sun, than in *England*. Whoever is persecuted with them in his House may get rid of them by this easy Remedy. Let him but set open his Windows at Sun-set, and shut them again before the Twilight be quite shut in, all the Musketaes in the Room will go out at the Windows, and leave the Room clear.

Chinches are a sort of flat Bug, which lurks in the Bedsteads and Bedding, and disturbs People's Rest a-nights. Every neat House-wife contrives there, by several Devices, to keep her Beds clear of them. But the best way I ever heard, effectually to destroy them, is by a narrow Search among the Bedding early in the Spring, before these Vermine begin to nitt, and run about; for they lie snug all the Winter, and are in the Spring large and full of the Winter's Growth, having all their Seed within them; and so they become a fair Mark to find, and may with their whole Breed be destroyed; they are the same, as they have in *London* near the Shipping.

Seed-Tick, and Red-Worms are small Insects, that annoy the People by Day, as Musketaes, and Chinches do by Night; but both these keep out of your way, if you keep out of theirs; for Seed-

Ticks are no where to be met with, but in the Track of Cattle, upon which the great Ticks fasten, and fill their Skins so full of Blood, that they drop off, and where-ever they happen to fall, they produce a kind of Egg, which lies about a Fort-night before the Seedlings are hatch'd. These Seedlings run in Swarms up the next Blade of Grass that lies in their Way; and then the first thing that brushes that Blade of Grass, gathers off most of these Vermine, which stick like Burs upon any thing that touches them. They void their Eggs at their Mouth.

Red Worms lie only in old dead Trees, and rotten Logs; and without sitting down upon such, a Man never meets with them, nor at any other Season, but only in the midst of Summer. A little warm Water immediately brings off both Seed-Ticks and Red-Worms, tho' they lie ever so thick upon any Part of the Body: But without some such Remedy they will be troublesome; for they are so small that nothing will lay hold of them, but the Point of a Pen-knife, Needle, or such like. But if nothing be done to remove them, the Itching they occasion goes away after two Days.

§. 81. Their Winters are very short, and don't continue above three or four Months, of which they have seldom thirty Days of unpleasant Weather, all the rest being blest with a clear Air, and a bright Sun. However, they have very hard Frost sometimes, but it rarely lasts above three or four Days, that is, till the Wind change; for if it blow not between the *North* and *North-West* Points, from the cold *Appellatian* Mountains, they have no Frost at all. But these Frosts are attended with a serene Sky, and are otherwise made delightful by the Tameness of the Wild-fowl and
other

other Game, which by their incredible Number, afford the pleafantest shooting in the World.

Their Rains, except in the Depth of Winter, are extremely agreeable and refreshing. All the Summer long they laft but a few Hours at a time, and fometimes not above half an Hour, and then immediately fucceeds clear Sun-fhine again: But in that fhort time it rains fo powerfully, that it quits the Debt of a long Drought, and makes every thing green and gay.

I have heard that this Country is reproached with fudden, and dangerous Changes of Weather; but that Imputation is unjuft: For tho' it be true, that in the Winter, when the Wind comes over thofe vaft Mountains and Lakes to the *North-Weft*, which are fupposed to retain vaft Magazines of Ice, and Snow, the Weather is then very rigorous; yet in Spring, Summer and Autumn, fuch Winds are only cool and pleafant Breezes, which ferve to refresh the Air, and correct thofe Excefles of Heat, which the Situation would otherwife make that Country liable to.



C H A P. XX.

Of the Difcafes incident to Virginia.

§. 82. **W**HILE we are upon the Climate, and its Accidents, it will not be improper, to mention the Difcafes incident to *Virginia*. Diftempers come not there by choaking up the Spirits, with a foggy and thick Air, as in fome *Northern* Climes; nor by a ftifling Heat, that exhales the Vigor of thofe that dwell in a more *Southerly* Latitude: But by a willful and foolifh indulging

indulging themselves in those Pleasures, which in a warm and fruitful Country, Nature lavishes upon Mankind, for their Happiness, and not for their Destruction.

Thus I have seen Persons impatient of Heat, lie almost naked upon the cold Grass in the Shades, and there, often forgetting themselves, fall asleep. Nay, many are so imprudent, as to do this in an Evening, and perhaps lie so all Night; when between the Dew from Heaven, and the Damps from the Earth, such Impressions are made upon the Humors of their Body, as occasion fatal Distempers.

Thus also have I seen Persons put into a great Heat by excessive Action, and in the midst of that Heat, strip off their Cloaths, and expose their open Pores to the Air. Nay, I have known some mad enough in this hot Condition, to take huge Draughts of cold Water, or perhaps of Milk and Water, which they esteem much more cold in Operation than Water alone.

And thus likewise have I seen several People, (especially New-comers) so intemperate in devouring the pleasant Fruits, that they have fallen into dangerous Fluxes and Surfeits. These, and such like Disorders, are the chief Occasions of their Diseases.

§. 83. The first Sickness that any New-comer happens to have there, he unfairly calls a Seasoning, be it Fever, Ague, or any thing else, that his own Folly or Excesses bring upon him.

Their intermitting Fevers, as well as their Agues, are very troublesome, if a fit Remedy be not apply'd; but of late the Doctors there have made use of the *Cortex Peruviana* with Success, and find that it seldom or never fails to remove the Fits. The Planters too, have several Roots natu-

ral to the Country, which in this case they cry up as infallible; and I have found by many Examples a total Immerſion in cold Spring Water, juſt at the Acceſſion of the Fit an infallible Cure.

§. 84. When theſe Damps, Colds and Diſorders, affect the Body more gently, and do not ſeize People violently at firſt; then for want of ſome timely Application, (the Planters abhorring all Phyſick, except in deſperate caſes) theſe ſmall Diſorders are ſuffer'd to go on, until they grow into a *Cachexie*, by which the Body is over-run with obſtinate ſcorbutick Humours. And this in a more fierce, and virulent Degree, I take to be the Yaws.

§. 85. The Gripes is a Diſtemper of the *Caribbee* Iſlands, not of that Country, and ſeldom gets footing there, and then only upon great Provocations; namely, by the Intemperances before mentioned, together with an unreaſonable Uſe of filthy and unclean Drinks. Perhaps too it may come by new unſine Cyder, Perry, or Peach-drink, which the People are impatient to drink before it is ready; or by the exceſſive Uſe of Lime-Juice, and foul Sugar in Punch and Flip; or elſe by the conſtant drinking of uncorrected Beer, made of ſuch windy unwholſome things as ſome People make uſe of in Brewing.

Thus having fairly reckoned up the principal Inconveniencies of the Climate, and the Diſtempers incident to the Country, I ſhall add a Chapter of the Recreations and Amuſements uſed there, and proceed to the natural Benefits they enjoy. After which, I ſhall conclude with ſome Hints concerning their Trade and Improvements.



C H A P. XXI.

Of the Recreations, and Pastimes used in Virginia.

§. 86. **F**OR their Recreation, the Plantations, Orchards, and Gardens constantly afford them fragrant and delightful Walks. In their Woods and Fields, they have an unknown Variety of Vegetables, and other Rarities of Nature to discover and observe. They have Hunting, Fishing, and Fowling, with which they entertain themselves an hundred ways. There is the most Good-nature, and Hospitality practis'd in the World, both towards Friends and Strangers: but the worst of it is, this Generosity is attended now and then, with a little too much Intemperance. The Neighbourhood is at much the same Distance, as in the Country in *England*; but the Goodness of the Roads, and the Fairness of the Weather, bring People often together.

§. 87. The *Indians*, as I have already observ'd, had in their Hunting, a way of concealing themselves, and coming up to the Deer, under the blind of a Stalking-Head, in Imitation of which, many People have taught their Horses to stalk it, that is, to walk gently by the Huntsman's side, to cover him from the Sight of the Deer. Others cut down Trees for the Deer to browse upon, and lie in wait behind them. Others again set Stakes, at a certain Distance within their Fences, where the Deer have been used to leap over into a Field of Peas, which they love extremely; these Stakes they so place,

place, as to run into the Body of the Deer, when he pitches, by which means they impale him; and for a Temptation to the Leap take down the Top part of the Fence.

§. 88. They hunt their Hares, (which are very numerous) a Foot, with Mungrils or swift Dogs, which either catch them quickly, or force them to hole in a hollow Tree, whither all their Hares generally tend, when they are closely pursued. As soon as they are thus holed, and have crawl'd up into the Body of the Tree, the Business is to kindle a Fire, and smother them with Smoak, till they let go their Hold, and fall to the Bottom stifled; from whence they take them. If they have a mind to spare their Lives, upon turning them loose, they will be as fit as ever to hunt at another time; for the Mischief done them by the Smoak, immediately wears off again.

§. 89. They have another sort of Hunting, which is very diverting, and that they call Vermin Hunting; It is perform'd a Foot, with small Dogs in the Night, by the Light of the Moon or Stars. Thus in Summer-time they find Abundance of Raccoons, Opossums, and Foxes in the Corn-Fields, and about their Plantations: but at other times they must go into the Woods for them. The Method is to go out with three or four Dogs, and as soon as they come to the place, they bid the Dogs seek out, and all the Company follow immediately. Wherever a Dog barks, you may depend upon finding the Game; and this Alarm draws both Men and Dogs that Way. If this Sport be in the Woods, the Game, by that time you come near it, is perhaps mounted to the Top of an high Tree, and then they detatch a nimble Fellow up after it, who must have a Scuffle with the Beast, before

before he can throw it down to the Dogs; and then the Sport increases, to see the Vermin encounter those little Curs. In this sort of Hunting, they also carry their great Dogs out with them; because Wolves, Bears, Panthers, Wild-Cats, and all other Beasts of Prey, are abroad in the Night.

For Wolves they make Traps, and set Guns baited in the Woods, so that when he offers to seize the Bait, he pulls the Trigger, and the Gun discharges upon him. What *Ælian* and *Pliny* write, of the Horses being benumbed in their Legs, if they tread in the Track of a Wolf, does not hold good here; for I my self, and many others, have rid full Speed after Wolves in the Woods, and have seen live ones taken out of a Trap, and drag'd at a Horse's Tail; and yet those that follow'd on Horse-back, have not perceiv'd any of their Horses to falter in their Pace.

§. 90. They have many pretty Devices besides the Gun, to take wild Turkeys; and among others, a Friend of mine invented a great Trap, wherein he at times caught many 'Turkeys, and particularly seventeen at one time; but he could not contrive it so, as to let others in, after he had entrapp'd the first Flock, until they were taken out.

§. 91. The *Indian* Invention of Weirs in Fishing, is mightily improved by the *English*, besides which, they make use of Seins, Trolls, Casting-Nets, Setting-Nets, Hand-fishing, and Angling, and in each find Abundance of Diversion. I have sat in the Shade, at the Heads of the Rivers, Angling, and spent as much time in taking the Fish off the Hook, as in waiting for their taking it. Like those of the *Euxine* Sea, they also fish
with

with Spilyards, which is a long Line staked out in the River, and hung with a great many Hooks on short Strings, fastned to the main Line, about three or four Foot asunder, supported by Stakes, or buoyed up with Gourds. They use likewise the *Indian* way of striking the Light of a Fire in the Night, as is described in the 2^d Book, Cap. 5. §. 23.

§. 92. Their Fowling is answerable to their Fishing for Plenty of Game, in its proper Season. Some Plantations have a vast Variety of it, several sorts of which, I have not yet mention'd, as Beaver, Otter, Squirrels, Partridges, Pigeons, and an infinite Number of small Birds, &c.

§. 93. The admirable OEconomy of the Beavers deserves to be particularly remembred. They cohabit in one House, are incorporated in a regular Form of Government, something like Monarchy, and have over them a Superintendent, which the *Indians* call *Pericu*. He leads them out to their several Employments, which consist in felling of Trees, biting off the Branches, and cutting them into certain Lengths, suitable to the Business they design them for, all which they perform with their Teeth. When this is done, the *Pericu* orders several of his Subjects to join together, and take up one of those Logs, which they must carry to their House or Damm, as Occasion requires. He walks in State by them all the while, and sees that every one bears his equal Share of the Burthen; while he bites with his Teeth, and lashes with his Tail, those that lag behind, and do not lend all their Strength; their way of Carriage is upon their Tail. They commonly build their Houses in Swamps, and then to raise the Water to a convenient Height, they make a Damm with Logs, and a binding sort of Clay,

Clay so firm, that though the Water runs continually over, it cannot wash it away. Within these Damms they'l inclose Water enough to make a Pool like a Mill-pond; and if a Mill happen to be built on the same Stream, below their Damm, the Miller, in a dry Season, finds it worth his while to cut it, to supply his Mill with Water. Upon which Disaster the Beavers are so expert at their Work, that in one or two Nights time they will repair the Breach, and make it perfectly whole again. Sometimes they build their Houses in a broad Marsh, where the Tide ebbs and flows, and then they make no Damm at all. The Doors into their Houses are under Water. I have been at the Demolishing of one of these Houses, that was found in a Marsh, and was surprized to find it fortified with Logs, that were six Foot long, and ten Inches through, and had been carried at least one hundred and fifty Yards. This House was three Stories high, and contain'd five Rooms, that is to say, two in the lower, two in the middle Storie, and but one at the Top. These Creatures have a great deal of Policy, and know how to defeat all the Subtilty and Stratagems of the Hunter, who seldom can meet with them, tho' they are in great Numbers all over the Country.

§. 94. There is yet another kind of Sport, which the young People take great Delight in, and that is, the Hunting of wild Horses; which they pursue sometimes with Dogs, and sometimes without. You must know they have many Horses foaled in the Woods of the Uplands, that never were in hand, and are as shy as any Savage Creature. These having no Mark upon them, belong to him that first takes them. However, the Captor commonly purchases these Horses very dear, by spoiling better in the Pursuit; in which case
he

he has little to make himself amends, besides the Pleasure of the Chace. And very often this is all he has for it; for the wild Horses are so swift, that 'tis difficult to catch them; and when they are taken, 'tis odds but their Grease is melted, or else being old, they are so fullen, that they can't be tamed.

§. 95. The Inhabitants are very courteous to Travellers, who need no other Recommendation, but the being human Creatures. A Stranger has no more to do, but to inquire upon the Road, where any Gentleman, or good House-keeper, lives, and there he may depend upon being received with Hospitality. This good Nature is so general among their People, that the Gentry, when they go abroad, order their principal Servant to entertain all Visitors, with every thing the Plantation affords. And the poor Planters, who have but one Bed, will very often sit up, or lie upon a Form or Couch all Night, to make room for a weary Traveller, to repose himself after his Journey.

If there happen to be a Churl, that either out of Covetousness, or Ill-nature won't comply with this generous Custom, he has a Mark of Infamy set upon him, and is abhorr'd by all.



C H A P. VI.

*Of the Natural Product of Virginia, and the
Advantages of their Husbandry.*

§. 96. **T**HE extreme Fruitfulness of that Country, has been sufficiently shewn in the Second Book, and I think we may justly add, that in that particular it is not exceeded by any other. No Seed is sowed there, but it thrives; and most of the *Northern* Plants are improved, by being transplanted thither. And yet there's very little Improvement made among them, seldom any thing us'd in Traffick but Tobacco.

Besides all the natural Productions mentioned in the Second Book, you may take notice that Apples from the Seed never degenerate into Crabs there, but produce as good or perhaps better Fruit than the Mother-tree, (which is not so in *England*;) and are wonderfully improved by grafting and managing; yet there are very few Planters that graft at all, and much fewer that take any care to get choice Fruits.

The Fruit-Trees are wonderfully quick of Growth; so that in six or seven Years time from the Planting, a Man may bring an Orchard to bear in great Plenty, from which he may make store of good Cyder, or distill great Quantities of Brandy; for the Cyder is very strong, and yields abundance of Spirit. Yet they have very few, that take any care at all for an Orchard; nay, many that have good Orchards are so negligent
of

of them, as to let them go to ruin, and expose the Trees to be torn and barked by the Cattle.

Peaches, Nectarines and Apricocks, as well as Plums and Cherries, grow there upon Standard Trees. They commonly bear in three Years from the Stone, and thrive so exceedingly, that they seem to have no need of grafting or inoculating, if any Body would be so good a Husband; and truly I never heard of any that did graft either Plum, Nectarine, Peach or Apricock in that Country, before the first Edition of this Book.

Peaches and Nectarines I believe to be spontaneous, somewhere or other on that Continent; for the *Indians* have, and ever had greater Variety, and finer sorts of them than the *English*. The best sort of these cling to the Stone, and will not come off clear, which they call Plum-Nectarines, and Plum-Peaches, or Cling-Stones. Some of these are 12 or 13 Inches in the Girt. These sorts of Fruits are raised so easily there, that some good Husbands plant great Orchards of them, purposely for their Hogs; and others make a Drink of them, which they call Mobby, and either drink it as Cyder, or distill it off for Brandy. This makes the best Spirit next to Grapes.

Grape-Vines of the *English* Stock, as well as those of their own Production, bear most abundantly, if they are suffered to run near the Ground, and increase very kindly by slipping; yet very few have them at all in their Gardens, much less endeavour to improve them by cutting or laying. But since the first Impression of this Book, some Vineyards have been attempted, and one is brought to perfection, of 750 Gallons a Year. The Wine drinks at present greenish, but the Owner doubts not of good Wine, in a Year or two more, and takes great Delight that Way.

When

When a single Tree happens in clearing the Ground, to be left standing, with a Vine upon it, open to the Sun and Air; that Vine generally produces as much as four or five others, that remain in the Woods. I have seen in this case, more Grapes upon one single Vine, than would load a *London* Cart. And for all this, the People till of late never removed any of them into their Gardens, but contented themselves throughout the whole Country with the Grapes they found thus wild.

A Garden is no where sooner made than there, either for Fruits or Flowers. Tulips from the Seed-flower the second Year. All Sorts of Herbs have there a Perfection in their Flavour, beyond what I ever tasted in a more *Northern* Climate. And yet they han't many Gardens in that Country, fit to bear the Name of Gardens.

§. 97. All Sorts of *English* Grain thrive, and increase there, as well as in any other part of the World, as for Example, Wheat, Barley, Oats, Rye, Peas, Rape, &c. And yet they don't make a Trade of any of them. Their Peas indeed troubled with Wivels, which eat a Hole in them: But this Hole does neither damage the Seed, nor make the Peas unfit for boiling. And such as are sowed late, and gathered after *August*, are clear of that Inconvenience.

It is thought too much for the same Man, to make the Wheat, and grind it, bolt it, and bake it himself. And it is too great a Charge for every Planter, who is willing to sow Barley, to build a Malt-house, and Brew-house too, or else to have no Benefit of his Barley; nor will it answer, if he would be at the Charge. These things can never be expected from a single Family:
But

But if they had Cohabitations, it might be thought worth attempting. Neither as they are now settled, can they find any certain Market for their other Grain, which, if they had Towns, would be quite otherwise.

Rice has been tried there, and is found to grow as well as in *Carolina*: But it labours under the same Inconvenience, the Want of a Community to husk and clean it, and after all, to take it off the Planter's Hands.

§. 98. I have related at large in the first Book, how Flax, Hemp, Cotton, and the Silk-Worms have thriven there, in the several Essays made upon them; how formerly there was Incouragement given for making of Linen, Silk, &c. and how all Persons not performing several things towards producing of them were put under a Fine: But now all Incouragement of such things is taken away or intirely dropt by the Assemblies, and such Manufactures are always neglected when Tobacco bears any thing of a Price.

Silk-grass is there spontaneous in many Places. I need not mention what Advantage may be made of so useful a Plant, whose Fibres are as fine as Flax, and much stronger than Hemp. Mr. Purchas tells us, in his *Fourth Pilgrim*, page 1786, that in the first Discovery of this part of the World, they presented Q. *Elizabeth* with a Piece of Grogram that had been made of it. And yet to this Day they make no manner of Use of this Plant, no, not so much as the *Indians* did, before the *English* came among them, who then made their Baskets, Fishing Nets and Lines of it.

§. 99. The Sheep increase well, and bear good Fleeces; but they generally are suffered to be torn off their Backs by Briars and Bushes, instead of
T
being

being thorn, or else are left rotting upon the Dunghil with their Skins.

Bees thrive there abundantly, and will very easily yield to the careful Hufwife a full Hive of Honey, and besides lay up a Winter-store sufficient to preserve their Stocks.

The Beeves, when any Care is taken of them in the Winter, come to good Perfection. They have noble Marshes there, which, with the Charge of draining only, would make as fine Pastures as any in the World; and yet there is hardly an hundred Acres of Marsh drained throughout the whole Country.

Hogs swarm like Vermine upon the Earth, and are often accounted such, insomuch that when an Inventory of any considerable Man's Estate is taken by the Executors, the Hogs are left out, and not listed in the Appraisement. The Hogs run where they list, and find their own Support in the Woods, without any Care of the Owner; and in many Plantations it is well if the Proprietor can find and catch the Pigs, or any part of a Farrow, when they are young to mark them; for if there be any marked in a Gang of Hogs, they determine the Propriety of the rest, because they seldom miss their Gangs; but as they are bred in Company, so they continue to the End, except sometimes the Boars ramble.

§. 100. The Woods produce great Variety of Incense and sweet Gums, which distil from several Trees; as also Trees bearing Honey, and Sugar, as before was mentioned: Yet there's no Use made of any of them, either for Profit or Refreshment.

All Sorts of Naval Stores may be produced there, as Pitch, Tar, Rosin, Turpentine, Plank, Timber, and all Sorts of Masts and Yards, besides

sides Sails, Cordage and Iron, and all these may be transported by an easy Water-carriage.

§. 101. These and a thousand other Advantages that Country naturally affords, which its Inhabitants make no manner of use of. They can see their Naval Stores daily benefit other People, who send thither to build Ships; while they, instead of promoting such Undertakings among themselves, and easing such as are willing to go upon them, allow them no manner of Encouragement, but rather the contrary. They receive no Benefit nor Refreshment from the Sweets, and precious things they have growing amongst them, but make use of the Industry of *England* for all such things.

What Advantages do they see the neighbouring Plantations make of their Grain and Provisions, while they, who can produce them infinitely better, not only neglect the making a Trade thereof, but even a necessary Provision against an accidental Scarcity, contenting themselves with a Supply of Food from Hand to Mouth, so that if it should please God to send them an unseasonable Year, there would not be found in the Country Provision sufficient to support the People for three Months extraordinary.

By reason of the unfortunate Method of the Settlement, and Want of Cohabitation, they cannot make a beneficial Use of their Flax, Hemp, Cotton, Silk, Silk-grass and Wool, which might otherwise supply their Necessities, and leave the Produce of Tobacco to enrich them, when a gainful Market can be found for it.

Thus they depend altogether upon the Liberality of Nature, without endeavouring to improve its Gifts by Art or Industry. They sponge upon the Blessings of a warm Sun, and a fruitful Soil, and almost grutch the Pains of gathering in the

Bounties of the Earth. I should be ashamed to publish this slothful Indolence of my Countrymen, but that I hope it will some time or other rouse them out of their Lethargy, and excite them to make the most of all those happy Advantages which Nature has given them; and if it does this, I am sure they will have the Goodness to forgive me.

F I N I S.






T H E T A B L E. --- B O O K I. ---

C H A P. I.

*An History of the first Attempts to settle Virginia,
before the Discovery of Chelapeak Bay.*

- §. 1.  *I R Walter Raleigh obtains Letters
Patent for making Discoveries in
America.* 1
2. *Two Ships set out on the Discovery,
and arrive at Pamtego.* 2
- Their Account of the Country.* ibid.
- Their Account of the Natives.* 3
3. *Queen Elizabeth names the Country of Virginia.* ib.
4. *Sir Richard Greenvill's Voyage.* 4
- He plants the first Colony under Command of Mr.
Ralph Lane.* 5
- The Discoveries and Accidents of the first Colony.* ib.
6. *Their Distress by want of Provisions.* 6
- Sir Francis Drake visits them.* ibid.
- He gives them a Ship and Necessaries.* ibid.
- He takes them away with him.* 7
7. *Sir Walter Raleigh and Sir Richard Greenville
their Voyages.* ibid.

The T A B L E.

| | |
|---|-------|
| <i>The second Settlement made.</i> | 8 |
| 8. <i>Mr John White's Expedition.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>The first Indian made a Christian there.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>The first Child born there of Christian Parentage.</i> | 9 |
| <i>The third Settlement, incorporated by the name of</i> <i>The City of Raleigh in Virginia.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Mr. White their Governour sent home to solicit for</i> <i>Supplies.</i> | ibid. |
| 9. <i>Mr. John White's second Voyage, the last Attempts</i> <i>to carry them Recruits.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>His Disappointment.</i> | 10 |
| 10. <i>Captain Gosnol's Voyage to the Coast of Cape</i> <i>Codd.</i> | ibid. |
| 11. <i>The Bristol Voyages.</i> | 11 |
| 12. <i>A London Voyage, which discovered New York.</i> | ibid. |

C H A P. II.

*The Discovery of Chesapeak Bay, by the
Corporation of London Adventurers. Their
Colony at James Town, and Proceedings du-
ring the Government by an Elective President
and Council.*

| | |
|---|-------|
| §. 13. <i>The Companies of London and Plymouth obtain</i> <i>Charters.</i> | 13 |
| 14. <i>Captain Smith first discovers the Capes of Virginia.</i> | 14 |
| 15. <i>He plants his first Colony at James Town.</i> | 15 |
| <i>An Account of James Town Island.</i> | ibid. |
| 16. <i>He sends the Ships home, retaining one hundred</i> <i>eight Men to keep Possession.</i> | 16 |
| 17. <i>That Colony's Mismanagement.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Their Misfortunes upon Discovery of a supposed</i> <i>Gold Mine.</i> | 17 |
| 18. <i>Their first Supplies after Settlement.</i> | 18 |

Their

The T A B L E.

Their Discoveries and Experiments in English Grain. 18

An Attempt of some to desert the Colony. 19

19. *The first Christian Marriage in that Colony.* *ibid.*

They make three Plantations more. *ibid.*

C H A P. III.

The History of the Colony after the Change of their Government, from an Elective President to a Commissionated Governour, until the Dissolution of the Company.

§. 20. *The Company get a new Grant, and the Nomination of the Governours in themselves.* 20

They send three Governours in equal degree. *ibid.*

All three going in one Ship are shipwrackt at Bermudas. *ibid.*

They build there two small Cedar Vessels. 21

21. *Captain Smith's Return for England.* *ibid.*

Mismanagements ruin the Colony. *ibid.*

The first Massacre and Starving time. *ibid.*

The first occasion of the ill Character of Virginia. 22

The five hundred Men left by Captain Smith reduced to sixty in six Months time. 23

22. *The three Governours sail from Bermudas, and arrive at Virginia.* *ibid.*

23. *They take off the Christians that remain'd there, and design by way of Newfoundland to return to England.* 23

The Lord Delaware arrives, and turns them back. 24

24. *Sir Tho. Dale arrives Governour with Supplies.* *ib.*

25. *Sir Thomas Gates arrives Governour.* 24

He plants out a new Plantation. 25

26. *Pocahontas made Prisoner, and married to Mr. Rolfe.* *ibid.*

17. *Peace with the Indians.* 27

The T A B L E.

| | |
|--|--------|
| 28. Pocahontas brought to England by Sir Thomas Dale. | 28 |
| 29. Captain Smith's Petition to the Queen in her behalf. | ibid. |
| 30. His Visit to Pocahontas's. | 29 |
| An Indian's, Account of the People of England. | 30 |
| 31. Pocahontas Reception at Court, and Death. | ibid. |
| 32. Captain Yardley's Government. | 31 |
| 33. Govenour Argall's good Administration. | 32 |
| 34. Powhatan's Death and Successors. | ibid. |
| Peace renewed by the Successors. | ibid. |
| 35. Captain Argall's Voyage from Virginia to New England. | 33 |
| 36. He defeats the French Northward of New England. | ibid. |
| 37. An Account of those French. | 34 |
| 38. He also defeats the French in Arcadia. | ibid. |
| 39. His return to England. | 35 |
| Sir George Yardley Governour. | ibid. |
| 40. He resettles the deserted Plantation, and held the first Assembly. | ibid. |
| The Method of that Assembly. | ibid. |
| 41. The first Negroes carried to Virginia. | ibid. |
| 42. Land apportion'd to Adventurers. | 36 |
| 43. A Salt-Work and Iron Work in Virginia. | ibid. |
| 44. Sir Francis Wyat made Governour. | 37 |
| King James his Instructions in care of Tobacco. | ibid. |
| Captain Newport's Plantation. | ibid. |
| 45. Inferior Courts in each Plantation. | 38 |
| Too much Familiarity with the Indians. | ibid. |
| 46. The Massacre by the Indians, Anno 1622. | ibid. |
| 47. The Discovery and Prevention of it at James Town. | 39 |
| 48. The Occasion of the Massacre. | 40 |
| 49. A Plot to destroy the Indians. | 42 |
| 50. The discouraging effects of the Massacre. | ibid. |
| 51. The Corporation in England are the chief Cause of Misfortunes in Virginia. | 43 |
| | 52 The |

The T A B L E.

52 *The Company dissolv'd, and the Colony taken into the King's Hands.* 44

C H A P. IV.

The History of the Government, from the Dissolution of the Company to the Year 1704.

- §. 53. *King Charles I. establishes the Constitution of Government in the Methods appointed by the first Assembly.* 45
54. *The ground of the ill Settlement of Virginia.* *ibid.*
55. *Lord Baltemore in Virginia.* 66
56. *Lord Baltemore Proprietor of Maryland.* *ibid.*
Maryland nam'd from the Queen. 47
57. *Young Lord Baltemore seats Maryland.* *ibid.*
Misfortune to Virginia, by making Maryland a distinct Government. *ibid.*
58. *Great Grants and Defalcations from Virginia.* 48
59. *Governour Harvey sent Prisoner to England, and by the King remanded back Governour again.* *ibid.*
60. *The last Indian Massacre.* 49
61. *A Character and Account of Oppechancanough the Indian Emperor.* *ibid.*
62. *Sir William Berkeley made Governour.* 50
63. *He takes Oppechancanough Prisoner.* *ibid.*
Oppechancanough's Death. 51
64. *A new Peace with the Indians, but the Country disturb'd by the Troubles in England.* *ibid.*
- 65 *Virginia subdu'd by the Protector.* 52
66. *Oliver binds the Plantations by an Act of Navigation.* *ibid.*
67. *His Jealousie and Change of Governours in Virginia.* 53
68. *Upon the Death of Matthews the Protector's Governour, Sir William Berkeley is chosen by the People.* *ibid.*

The T A B L E.

69. *He proclaims King Charles II. before he was
proclaim'd in England.* 54
70. *King Charles II. renews Sir William Berkeley's
Commission.* *ibid.*
71. *Sir William Berkeley makes Collonel Morry-
son Deputy Governour, and goes to England.* 55
The King renews the Act concerning the Plantation. *ibid.*
72. *The Laws revised.* *ibid.*
The Church of England established by Law. *ibid.*
73. *Clergy provided for by Law.* *ibid.*
74. *The publick Charge of the Government sustain'd
by Law.* 56
75. *Encouragement of particular Manufactures by
Law.* *ibid.*
76. *The Instruction for all Ships to enter at James
Town used by Law.* *ibid.*
77. *Indian Affairs settled by Law.* 57
78. *James Town encouraged by Law.* *ibid.*
79. *Restraints upon Sectaries in Religion.* *ibid.*
80. *A Plot to subvert the Government.* 58
81. *The Defeat of the Plot.* *ibid.*
82. *An Anniversary Feast upon that Occasion.* 59
83. *The King commands the building a Fort at James
Town.* *ibid.*
84. *A new Restraint on the Plantations by Act of
Parliament.* *ibid.*
85. *Endeavours for a Stint in planting Tobacco.* *ibid.*
86. *Another Endeavour at a Stint defeated.* 60
87. *The King sent Instructions to build Forts, and con-
fine their Trade to certain Ports.* 61
88. *The Disappointment of those Ports.* *ibid.*
89. *Encouragement of Manufactures enlarg'd.* *ibid.*
90. *An Attempt to discover the Country backward.* 62
Captain Batt's Relation of that Discovery. *ibid.*
91. *Sir William Berkely intends to prosecute that
Discovery in Person.* 63

The T A B L E.

92. *The Grounds of Bacon's Rebellion.* 64
Four Ingredients thereto. *ibid.*
93. *First, The low Price of Tobacco.* 65
Secondly, The splitting the Country into Proprieties. *ibid.*
The Country send Agents to complain of the Propriety Grants. *ibid.*
94. *Thirdly, New Duties by Act in England on the Plantations.* 66
95. *Fourthly, Disturbances on the Land Frontiers by the Indians.* 67
First, By the Indians on the head of the Bay. *ibid.*
Secondly, By the Indians on their own Frontiers. *ibid.*
96. *The People rise against the Indians.* 68
They chuse Nathan. Bacon, Junior for their Leader. *ibid.*
97. *He heads them, and sends to the Governor for a Commission.* 69
98. *He begins his March without a Commission.* *ibid.*
The Governour sends for him. *ibid.*
99. *Bacon goes down in a Sloop with forty of his Men to the Governor.* *ibid.*
100. *He goes away in a Huff, and is pursued and brought back by the Governor.* 70
101. *Bacon steals privately out of Town, and marches down to the Assembly with six hundred of his Volunteers.* *ibid.*
102. *The Governor by Advice of the Assembly signs a Commission to Mr Bacon to be General.* 71
103. *Bacon being march'd away with his Men is proclaim'd Rebel.* *ibid.*
104. *Bacon returns with his Forces to James Town.* *ibid.*
105. *The Governor flies to Accomack.* 72
The People there begin to make Terms with him. *ibid.*
106. *Bacon & his a Convention of Gentlemen.* *ibid.*
They propose to take an Oath to him. *ibid.*
107. *The Forms of the Oath,* 73
108. *The*

The T A B L E.

| | |
|---|-------|
| 108. <i>The Governor makes head against him.</i> | 74 |
| <i>General Bacon's Death.</i> | 75 |
| 109. <i>Bacon's Followers surrender upon Articles.</i> | ibid. |
| 110. <i>The Agents compound with the Proprietors.</i> | ibid. |
| 111. <i>Soldiers arrive from England.</i> | 76 |
| 112. <i>A new Charter to Virginia.</i> | ibid. |
| 113. <i>The Dissolution by Bacon's Rebellion.</i> | ibid. |
| 114. <i>Commissioners arrive in Virginia, and Sir William Berkely returns to England.</i> | 77 |
| 115. <i>Herbert Jeffreys, Esq; Governor, concludes Peace with the Indians.</i> | ibid. |
| 116. <i>Sir Henry Chicheley, Deputy Governor, builds Forts against the Indians.</i> | 78 |
| <i>The Assembly prohibited the Importation of Tobacco.</i> | ibid. |
| 117. <i>Lord Culpepper, Governor.</i> | ibid. |
| 118. <i>Lord Culpepper's first Assembly.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>He passes several obliging Acts to the Country.</i> | 81 |
| 119. <i>He doubles the Governor's Salary.</i> | 79 |
| 120. <i>He imposes the Perquisite of Ship Money.</i> | ibid. |
| 121. <i>He by Proclamation raises the value of Spanish Coins, and lowers it again.</i> | 80 |
| 122. <i>Sir Henry Chichely, Deputy Governor.</i> | 81 |
| <i>The Plant cutting.</i> | ibid. |
| 123. <i>Lord Culpepper's second Assembly.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>He takes away Appeals to the Assembly.</i> | 82 |
| 124. <i>His Advantage thereby in the Propriety of the Northern Neck.</i> | 83 |
| 125. <i>He retrenches the new Methods of Court Proceedings.</i> | 84 |
| 126. <i>He dismantl'd the Forts on the Heads of Rivers, and appointed Rangers in their stead.</i> | ibid. |
| 127. <i>Mr. Secretary Spencer, President.</i> | 85 |
| 128. <i>Lord Effingham, Governor.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Some of his extraordinary Methods of getting Money.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Complaints against him.</i> | ibid. |
| 129. <i>Duty on Liquors first raised.</i> | 86 |
| 130. <i>Court</i> | |

The T A B L E.

| | |
|---|-------|
| 130. <i>Court of Chancery by Lord Effingham.</i> | 86 |
| 131. <i>Collonel Bacon, President.</i> | 87 |
| <i>The College design'd.</i> | ibid. |
| 132. <i>Esquire Nicholfon, Lieutenant Governor.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>He studies Popularity.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>The College proposed to him.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>He refuses to call an Assembly.</i> | ibid. |
| 133. <i>He grants a Brief to the College.</i> | ibid. |
| 134. <i>The Assembly address King William and Queen Mary for a College Charter.</i> | 88 |
| <i>The Education intended by this College.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>The Assembly present the Lieutenant Governor.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>His Method of securing this Present.</i> | ibid. |
| 137. <i>Their Majesties grant the Charter.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>They grant liberally towards the building and endowing of it.</i> | ibid. |
| 138. <i>The Lieutenant Governor encourages Towns and Manufactures.</i> | 89 |
| <i>Gentlemen of the Council complain of him, and are misus'd.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>He falls off from the Encouragement of the Towns and Trade.</i> | ibid. |
| 139. <i>Edmund Andros Governor.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>The Town Law suspended.</i> | ibid. |
| 140. <i>The Project of a Post Office.</i> | 90 |
| 141. <i>The College Charter arriv'd.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>The College farther endow'd, and the Foundation laid.</i> | ibid. |
| 142. <i>Sir Edmund encouraged Country Manufactures, and regulated the Secretary's Office.</i> | ibid. |
| 143. <i>A Child born in the old Age of the Parents.</i> | 91 |
| 144. <i>Francis Nicholfon Governor.</i> | 92 |
| <i>His and Collonel Quarry's Memorials against the Plantations.</i> | ibid. |
| 145. <i>His Zeal for the Church and College.</i> | 23 |
| 146. <i>He removes the General Court from James Town.</i> | ibid. |
| 147. <i>The taking of the Pyrate.</i> | ibid. |

The T A B L E.

| | | |
|------|---|-------|
| 148. | <i>The Sham Bills of nine hundred pound for New-York.</i> | 95 |
| 149. | <i>Collonel Quarry's unjust Memorials.</i> | 96 |
| 150. | <i>Governor Nott arrived.</i> | 97 |
| 151. | <i>Revisal of the Law finished.</i> | 98 |
| 152. | <i>Ports and Towns again set on foot.</i> | ibid. |
| 153. | <i>Slaves a real Estate.</i> | ibid. |
| 154. | <i>A House built for the Governor.</i> | ibid. |
| | <i>College burnt and the Governor dies.</i> | ibid. |
| 155. | <i>Edmond Jennings Esq. President.</i> | ibid. |
| 156. | <i>Alexander Spotswood Lieutenant Governor.</i> | 99 |



B O O K II.

Of the Natural Productions and Conveniencies of *Virginia* in its improv'd State, before the *English* went thither.

C H A P. I.

Of the Bounds and Coast of Virginia.

| | | |
|-------|---|-----|
| §. 1. | <i>Of the present Bounds of Virginia.</i> | 100 |
| 2. | <i>Of Chesapeak Bay, and the Sea Coast of Virginia.</i> | 101 |
| 3. | <i>What is meant by the Word Virginia in this Book.</i> | 102 |

C H A P. II.

Of the Waters.

| | | |
|-------|---|-----|
| §. 4. | <i>Of the Conveniency of the Bay and Rivers.</i> | 103 |
| 5. | <i>Of the Springs and Fountains descending to the Rivers.</i> | 104 |
| | | 2 |
| | 6. <i>Of</i> | |

The T A B L E.

6. *Of Damage by the Worm in the Salts.* ibid.
Of the Ways of avoiding that Damage. ibid.

C H A P. IV.

Of the Earth and Soil.

- §. 7. *Of the Soil in general.* 105
Of the Lands in the Lower } *parts of the* { 106
In the Middle } *Rivers.* { ibid.
In the Upper } { 107
8. *Of the Earths and Clays.* ibid.
Of the Cole, Slate and Stone, and why not used. 108
9. *Of Minerals, and therein of the Iron Mine formerly wrought upon.* ibid.
Of the supposed Gold Mines lately discovered. 109
That this Gold Mine was the Supreme Seat of the Indian Temples formerly. ibid.
That their chief Altar was there also. ibid.
Mr Whittaker's Account of a Silver Mine. 110
10. *Of the Hills in Virginia.* ibid.
Of the Springs in the High Lands. 111

C H A P. V.

Of the Wild Fruits.

- §. 11. *Of the spontaneous Fruits in general.* ibid.
12. *Of the stoned Fruits, viz. Cherries, Plumbs, and Persimmons.* 112
13. *Of the Berries, viz. Mulberries, Currans, Hurts, Cranberries, Raspberries, and Strawberries.* 113
14. *Of the Nuts, viz. Chesnuts, Chincapins, Haslenuts, Hiccory Nuts, Walnuts and Acorns.* 114
15. *Of Grapes, six sorts.* 116
The Report of some French Vignerons formerly sent in thither. 117
16. *Of the Honey and the Sugar Trees.* 118

17. *Of*

The T A B L E.

17. *Of the Myrtle Tree, and Myrtle Wax.* 119
Of the Hops growing wild. 120
18. *Of the great variety of Seeds, Plants, and Flowers.* *ibid.*
Of the two Snake-roots. 121
Of the James Town Weed. *ibid.*
Of some curious Flowers. 122
19. *Of the creeping Vines bearing Fruits, viz. Melons, Pompions, Macocks, Gourds, and Maracocks.* 123
20. *Of the other Fruits, Roots, and Plants of the Indians.* 125
Of the several sorts of Indian Corn and Pulse. *ibid.*
Of Potatoes. 127
Of Tobacco, as it was order'd by the Indians. *ibid.*

C H A P. VI.

Of the Fish.

- §. 21 *Of the great Plenty and Variety of Fish.* 128
Of the vast Shoals of Herrings, Shads, &c. *ibid.*
22. *Of the Continuality of the Fishery.* 129
The Names of some of the best edible Fish. *ibid.*
The Names of some that are not eaten. *ibid.*
23. *Of the Indian Children's catching Fish.* 130
Of the several Inventions of the Indians to take Fish. *ibid.*
24. *Of the Fishing Hawks and Bald Eagles.* 132
Of the Fish dropt into the Orchard. 133

C H A P. VI.

Of the Wild Fowl and Hunted Game.

- §. 25. *Of the Wild Water Fowl.* 134
26. *Of the Game in the Marshes and watry Grounds.* 135
27. *Of the Game in the Highlands and Frontiers.* *ibid.*
Of the Possum. *ibid.*
28. *Of some Indian ways of Hunting.* 136
Of

The T A B L E.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------|
| <i>Of Fire Hunting.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of their Hunting Quarters.</i> | 137 |
| 29. <i>Conclusion.</i> | 138 |



B O O K. III.

Of the *Indians*, their Religion, Laws, and Customs, in War and Peace.

C H A P. I.

Of the Persons of the Indians, and their Dress.

| | |
|---|-----|
| §. 1. <i>Of the Persons of the Indians, their colour and shape.</i> | 139 |
| 2. <i>Of the cut of their Hair, and ornament of their Head.</i> | 140 |
| 3. <i>Of their Vesture.</i> | 141 |
| 4. <i>Of the Garb peculiar to their Priests and Conjurers.</i> | 143 |
| 5. <i>Of the Women's Dress.</i> | 144 |

C H A P. II.

Of the Matrimony of the Indians, and management of their Children.

| | |
|--|-------|
| §. 6. <i>Of the Conditions of their Marriage.</i> | 145 |
| 7. <i>Of the Maidens, and the Story of their Prostitution.</i> | 146 |
| 8. <i>Of the Management of the young Children.</i> | ibid. |

C H A P. III.

Of the Towns, Building, and Fortification of the Indians.

| | |
|--|-----|
| §. 9. <i>Of the Towns and Kingdoms of the Indians.</i> | 147 |
| 10. <i>Of the manner of their Building.</i> | 148 |

U

11. *Of*

The T A B L E.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 11. <i>Of their Fewel, or Fire-wood.</i> | 149 |
| 12. <i>Of their Seats and Lodging.</i> | ibid. |
| 13. <i>Of their Fortifications.</i> | ibid. |

C H A P. IV.

Of the Cookery and Food of the Indians.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| §. 14. <i>Of their Cookery</i> | 150 |
| 15. <i>Of their several Sorts of Food.</i> | 151 |
| 16. <i>Of their Times of Eating.</i> | 153 |
| 17. <i>Of their Drink.</i> | ibid. |
| 18. <i>Their Ways of Dining.</i> | 154 |

C H A P. V.

Of the Travelling, Reception and Entertainment of the Indians.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| §. 19. <i>Of the Manner of their Travelling, and Provision they make for it.</i> | 155 |
| <i>Their Way of concealing their Course.</i> | 156 |
| 20. <i>The Manner of their Reception of Strangers.</i> | 157 |
| <i>Of the Pipe of Peace.</i> | ibid. |
| 21. <i>Of their Entertainment of honourable Friends.</i> | 159 |

C H A P. VI.

Of the Learning and Languages of the Indians.

- | | |
|---|-------|
| §. 22. <i>That they are without Letters.</i> | 160 |
| <i>Of their Descriptions by Hieroglyphicks</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of the Heraldry and Arms of the Indians.</i> | 161 |
| 23. <i>That they have different Languages.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of their general Language.</i> | ibid. |

The T A B L E.

C H A P. VII.

Of the War and Peace of the Indians.

- §. 24. *Of their Consultations and War Dances.* 162
25. *Of their Barbarity upon a Victory.* 163
26. *Of the Descent of the Crown.* *ibid.*
27. *Of their Triumphs for Victory.* *ibid.*
28. *Of their Treaties of Peace, and Ceremonies upon Conclusion of Peace.* 164

C H A P. VIII.

Of the Religion, Worship, and superstitious Customs of the Indians.

- §. 29. *Of their Quioccan and Idol of Worship.* 165
30. *Of their Notions of God, and worshiping the evil Spirit.* 169
31. *Of their Pawwawing or Conjurations.* 171
32. *Of their Huskanawing.* 175
33. *Of the Reasons of this Custom.* 179
34. *Of their Offerings and Sacrifice.* 180
35. *Of their set Feasts.* 181
36. *Of their Account of Time.* *ibid.*
37. *Of their Superstition and Zealotry.* 182
38. *Of their regard to the Priests and Magicians.* 183
39. *Of the Places of their Worship and Sacrifice.* 184
 Of their Pawcorances or Altar-Stones. *ibid.*
40. *Of their Care of the Bodies of their Princes after Death.* 185

C H A P. IX.

Of the Diseases and Cures of the Indians.

- §. 41. *Of their Diseases in general, and Burning for Cure.* 186
 Of their Sucking, Scarifying and Blistering. 187

The T A B L E.

| | |
|---|-------|
| <i>Of the Priests secrecy in the Virtues of Plants.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of the Words Wyfoccon Wighfacan and Wogh-facan.</i> | 188 |
| <i>Of their Physick and the Method of it.</i> | ibid. |
| 42. <i>Of their Bagnio's and Baths.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of their Oyling after Sweating.</i> | 189 |

C H A P. X.

Of the Sports and Pastimes of the Indians.

| | |
|--|-------|
| §. 43. <i>Of their Sports and Pastimes in general.</i> | 190 |
| <i>Of their Singing.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of their Dancing.</i> | 191 |
| <i>A Mask used among them.</i> | 192 |
| <i>Of their Musical Instruments.</i> | 193 |

C H A P. XI.

Of the Laws and Authorities of the Indians among one another.

| | |
|---|-------|
| §. 44. <i>Of their Laws in general.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of their Severity and ill Manners.</i> | 194 |
| <i>Of their implacable resentments.</i> | ibid. |
| 45. <i>Of their Honours, Preferments and Authorities.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of the Authority of the Priests and Conjurers.</i> | 195 |
| <i>Of the Servants or Black Boys.</i> | ibid. |

C H A P. XII.

Of the Treasure or Riches of the Indians.

| | |
|--|-----|
| §. 46. <i>Of the Indian Money and Goods.</i> | 195 |
|--|-----|

C H A P. XIII.

Of the Handicrafts of the Indians.

| | |
|--|-----|
| §. 47. <i>Of their Lesser Crafts, as making Bows and Arrows.</i> | 197 |
| 48. <i>Of</i> | |

The T A B L E.

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 48. <i>Of their making Canoes.</i> | 198 |
| <i>Of their Clearing Woodland Ground.</i> | ibid. |
| 49. <i>An Account of the Tributary Indians.</i> | 200 |



B O O K IV.

Of the present state of *Virginia*.

P A R T I.

Of the Politie and Government.

C H A P. I.

Of the Constitution of Government in Virginia.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| §. 1. <i>Of the Constitution of Government in general.</i> | 201 |
| 2. <i>Of the Governour, his Authority and Salary.</i> | 203 |
| 3. <i>Of the Council, and their Authority.</i> | 205 |
| 4. <i>Of the House of Burgeses.</i> | ibid. |

C H A P. II.

Of the Sub-divisions of Virginia.

- | | |
|---|-----|
| §. 5. <i>Of the Division of the Country.</i> | 207 |
| 6. <i>Of the Division of the Country by Necks of Land Counties, and Parishes.</i> | 208 |
| 7. <i>Of the Division of the Country by Districts for Trade by Navigation.</i> | 210 |

C H A P. III.

Of the Publick Offices in the Government.

- | | |
|--|-----|
| §. 8. <i>Of such General Officers as are immediately Commissionated from the Throne.</i> | 211 |
|--|-----|

The T A B L E.

| | |
|---|-------|
| <i>Of the Auditor and Receiver General.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of the Secretary.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of the Secretary's Office.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of the Salaries of those Officers.</i> | 212 |
| 9. <i>Of the other general Officers.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of the Ecclesiastical Commissary.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of the Country's Treasurer.</i> | ibid. |
| 10. <i>Of the other publick Officers by Commission.</i> | 213 |
| <i>Of the Escheators.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of the Naval Officers, and Collectors of the Customs.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of the Clerks of Courts, Sheriffs and Surveyors of Land.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of the Coroners.</i> | 214 |
| 11. <i>Of the other Officers without Commission, viz. Constables, Headboroughs and Surveyors of the Highways.</i> | ibid. |

C H A P. IV.

Of the Standing Revenues, or Publick Funds.

| | |
|---|-------|
| §. 12. <i>Of the publick Funds in general.</i> | 215 |
| 13. <i>Of the Quit-rent Fund.</i> | ibid. |
| 14. <i>Of the Funds for Maintenance of the Government.</i> | 216 |
| 15. <i>Of the Funds for extraordinary Occasions, under the Disposition of the Assembly.</i> | ibid. |
| 16. <i>Of the Revenue granted by the Act of Assembly to the College.</i> | 217 |
| 17. <i>Of the Revenue raised by Act of Parliament in England from the Trade there.</i> | ibid. |

C H A P. V.

Of the Levies for the Payment of the Publick, County, and Parish Debts.

| | |
|---|-----|
| §. 18. <i>Of the several Ways of raising Money publickly.</i> | 218 |
| <i>Of</i> | |

The T A B L E.

| | |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| <i>Of Titheables.</i> | 218 |
| 19. <i>Of the Publick Levy.</i> | 219 |
| 20. <i>Of the County Levy.</i> | ibid. |
| 21. <i>Of the Parish Levy.</i> | ibid. |

C H A P. VI.

Of the Courts of Law in Virginia.

| | |
|--|-------|
| §. 22. <i>Of the Constitution of their Courts.</i> | 220 |
| 23. <i>Of the several sorts of Courts among them.</i> | 221 |
| 24. <i>Of the General Court in particular, and its Jurisdiction.</i> | ibid. |
| 25. <i>Of the Times of holding a General Court.</i> | ibid. |
| 26. <i>Of the Officers attending this Court.</i> | 222 |
| 27. <i>Of Trials by Juries in this Court.</i> | ibid. |
| <i>Of impannelling Grand Juries.</i> | 223 |
| 28. <i>Of the Trial of Criminals.</i> | ibid. |
| 29. <i>Of the Time Suits there generally depend.</i> | ibid. |
| 30. <i>Of the Lawyers and Pleadings.</i> | 224 |
| 31. <i>Of County Courts.</i> | ibid. |
| 32. <i>Of Orphans Courts.</i> | 225 |

C H A P. VII.

Of the Church and Church Affairs.

| | |
|--|-------|
| §. 33. <i>Of the Parishes.</i> | 226 |
| 34. <i>Of the Churches and Chapels in each Parish.</i> | ibid. |
| 35. <i>Of the Religion of the Country.</i> | ibid. |
| 36. <i>Of the Benefices of the Clergy.</i> | ibid. |
| 37. <i>Of the Disposition of Parochial Affairs.</i> | 227 |
| 38. <i>Of the Probates, Administrations, and Marriage Licences.</i> | 228 |
| 39. <i>Of the Induction of Ministers, and Precariousness of their Livings.</i> | 229 |

The T A B L E.

C H A P. VIII.

Concerning the College.

- §. 40. *Of the College Endowments.* 230
41. *The College a Corporation.* *ibid.*
42. *Governours and Visitors of the College in perpetual Succession.* 231
These have the Nomination of President and Masters, and a Power of making Statutes, &c. *ibid.*
43. *Of College Buildings.* *ibid.*
44. *Of the Boys and Schooling.* *ibid.*

C H A P. IX.

Of the Military Strength in Virginia.

- §. 45. *Of the Forts and Fortifications.* 233
46. *Of the Listed Militia.* *ibid.*
47. *Of the Number of the Militia.* 234
48. *Of the Service of the Militia.* *ibid.*
49. *Other particulars of the Troops and Companies.* 235

C H A P. X.

Of the Servants and Slaves.

- §. 50. *Of the Distinction between a Servant and a Slave.* *ibid.*
51. *Of the Work of their Servants and Slaves.* *ibid.*
52. *Of the Laws in favour of Servants.* 236

C H A P. XI.

Of Provision for the Poor, and other publick Charitable works.

- §. 53. *Of a Legacy to the Poor.* 239
54. *Of*

The T A B L E.

54. *Of the Parish methods in maintaining their Poor.* ibid.
55. *Of Free Schools, and Schooling of Children.* 240

C H A P. XII.

Of the Tenure of Lands and Methods of Grants in Virginia.

- §. 56. *Of the Tenure and Patents of their Lands.* 240
57. *Of the several ways of acquiring Grants of Land.* 241
58. *Of Rights to Land.* ibid.
59. *Of Patents upon Survey.* ibid.
60. *Of Grants of Lapsed Land.* 242
61. *Of Grants of Escheat Land.* 243

C H A P. XIII.

Of the Liberties and Naturalization of the Aliens in Virginia.

- §. 62. *Of Naturalizations.* 244
63. *Of the French Refugees at the Monacan Town.* ibid.

C H A P. XIV.

Of the Currency and Valuation of Coins in Virginia.

- §. 64. *What Coins are current among them, at what rates, and why carried from among them to the Neighbouring Plantations.* 246



The T A B L E.



P A R T II

Of the Husbandry and Improvements of *Virginia*.

C H A P. XV.

Of the People, Inhabitants of Virginia.

- §. 65. **O**F the first Peopling of Virginia. 247
66. Of the first Accession of Wives to
Virginia. 248
67. Of the other Ways by which the Country was
increased in People. 249

C H A P. XVI.

Of the Buildings in Virginia.

- §. 68. Of the Publick Buildings. 249
69. Of the Private Buildings. 250

C H A P. XVII.

Of the Edibles, Potables, and Fewel in Virginia.

- §. 70. Of their Cookery. 250
71. Of their Flesh, and Fish. 252
72. Of their Bread. 253
73. Of their Kitchin Gardens. ibid.
74. Of their Drinks. 254
75. Of their Fewel. ibid.

C H A P.

The T A B L E.

C H A P. XVIII.

Of the Cloathing in Virginia.

- §. 76. *Of their Supplies in Cloathing.* 255
Of their Slothfulness in Handicrafts. ibid.

C H A P. XIX.

Of the Temperature of the Climate, and the Inconveniencies attending it.

- §. 77. *Of the Natural Temper and Mixture of the Air.* 256
78. *Of the Climate, and happy Situation of the Country in respect of the Latitude.* ibid.
79. *Of the Occasions of its general ill Character.* 257
Of the Rural Pleasures natural to the Place. 258
80. *Of all the natural Annoyances, or Occasions of Uneasiness.* 259
Of the loud Thunders. ibid.
Of the Heat of Summer. 260
Of the troublesome Insects, wherein of the Frogs, Snakes, Musketa's, Chinchies, Seedticks, and Red-worms. ibid.
81. *Of the Winters.* 268
Of the sudden Changes of the Weather. ibid.

C H A P. XX.

Of the Diseases incident to the Country.

- §. 82. *Of the Diseases in general.* 269
83. *Of the Scafoning.* 270
84. *Of the Cachexy and Yaws.* 271
85. *Of the Gripes.* ibid.

The T A B L E.

C H A P. XXI.

Of the Recreations and Pastimes in Virginia.

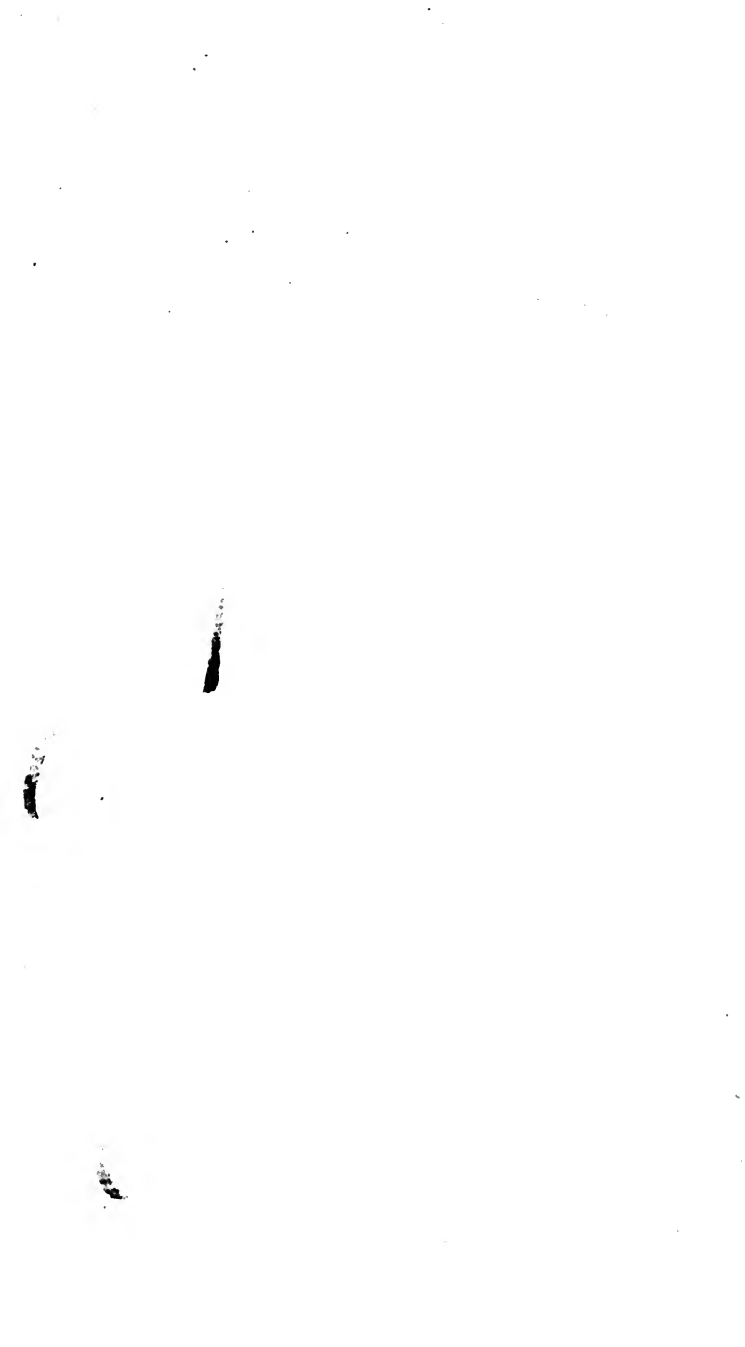
| | |
|---|-------|
| §. 86. <i>Of the Diversions in general.</i> | 272 |
| 87. <i>Of Deer-Hunting.</i> | ibid. |
| 88. <i>Of Hare-Hunting.</i> | 273 |
| 89. <i>Of Vermine-Hunting.</i> | ibid. |
| 90. <i>Of taking wild Turkies.</i> | 274 |
| 91. <i>Of Fishing.</i> | ibid. |
| 92. <i>Of the small Game.</i> | 275 |
| 93. <i>Of the Beaver.</i> | ibid. |
| 94. <i>Of Horse-Hunting.</i> | 276 |
| 95. <i>Of the Hospitality.</i> | 277 |

C H A P. XXII.

Of the Natural Product of Virginia, and the Advantages of Husbandry.

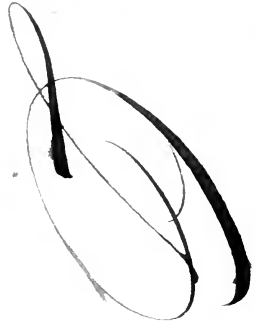
| | |
|---|-------|
| §. 96. <i>Of the Fruits.</i> | 278 |
| 97. <i>Of the Grain.</i> | 280 |
| 98. <i>Of Line, Silk, and Cotton.</i> | 281 |
| 99. <i>Of Bees and Cattle.</i> | ibid. |
| 100. <i>The Usefulness of the Woods.</i> | 282 |
| 101. <i>The Indolence of the Inhabitants.</i> | 283 |
| <i>The Schedule.</i> | |





204 17
~~173~~
111

2 2
4
7 1



11
4
191

191

191



Downloaded from <http://www.elsevier.com/locate/jbiotec>
by University of California, San Diego
Treasure Coast, CA 92081

PreservationTechnologies

A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION
111 Third Street, Suite 200
Orlando, Florida 32801
(407) 779-7792

